

ENGLISH

6th Prim.
2026
SECOND TERM



By a group of specialists



Contents

Part (1) Unit (1) Celebrating Creativity _____ 5

Unit (2) Wonderful Inventions _____ 49

Unit (3) Hidden Gems of Egypt _____ 92

Review (1) Test (7) Based on Units 1 -2-3 _____ 134

Unit (4) Egypt on The Move _____ 140

**Unit (5) Safe and Smart Transportation from
Egypt's Future** _____ 182

Review (2) Test (12) Based on Units 4 -5 _____ 223

**Unit (6) Story Time: The Library That
Time Forgot** _____ 229

Part (2) Listening Scripts _____ 256



Celebrating Creativity

الاحتفال بالإبداع

Unit 1

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit, students will be able to:

Listening

- Understand the main ideas and specific details in short spoken texts about art
- Answer questions based on short listening passages about artists or art studios
- Count the number of syllables in spoken words and identify two and three-syllable words

Reading

- Read and understand short texts about art galleries, art studios, and famous artists
- Identify and define key vocabulary words related to art and creativity
- Extract specific information from a text to answer comprehension questions
- Analyze a short dialog and arrange events in the correct order

Speaking

- Discuss and share thoughts about art, artists, and museums
- Use art-related vocabulary to describe ideas for an art studio and different types of art
- Express and justify opinions clearly when talking about artwork and creativity

Writing

- Write sentences correctly using new art-related vocabulary
- Use correlative conjunctions (**both...and**, **either...or**, **neither...nor**) accurately in sentences
- Write a short paragraph about creating an artwork, describing the process and inspiration
- Design a poster about a famous place in Egypt

Lesson 1

A Visit to the Art Gallery



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



whisper

يهمس



canvas

لوحة قماشية



paintbrush

فرشاة رسم



palette

لوحة الألوان



carve

ينحت / يحفر



masterpiece

تحفة فنية



art gallery

معرض فني



artist

فنان



pottery

الفخار



sculpture

تمثال منحوت

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

paintings

لوحات فنية

board

لوح خشبي

visit

زيارة/ يزور

mural

لوحة جدارية

metal

معدن

knife

سكين

surface

سطح

hammer

مطرقة

cloth

قماش

stone

حجر

secret

سر skill

مهارَة

art class

حصة الرسم museum

متحف

final

نهائي statue

تمثال

Adjectives

صفات

young

صغير السن

powerful

قوي

excited

متحمس

strange

غريب

huge

ضخم

colorful

زاهي الألوان

wooden

خشبي

bright

ساطع / مشرق

true

حقيقي

famous

مشهور

giant

عملاق

inspired

مُلهم

strong

قوي

bored

شاعر بالملل

angry

غاضب

great

رائع

soft

ناعم

ancient

قديم / عتيق

flat

مسطح

tired

مُتعب

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

Look at that!

انظر إلى ذلك!

from the inside

من الداخل

right away

على الفور / مباشرة

you know

كما تعلم

on a canvas

على قماش

right now

حاليًا / في هذه اللحظة

at the gallery

في المعرض

point to

يشير إلى

inspired by

مستوحى من

on the wall

على الحائط

walk into

يدخل إلى

looks like

يبدو كـ

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
whisper	يهمس	whispered	whispered
use	يستخدم	used	used
wish	يتمنى	wished	wished
carve	ينحت / يحفر	carved	carved
point	يشير	pointed	pointed
wait	ينتظر	waited	waited
start	يبدأ	started	started
dislike	لا يحب / يكره	disliked	disliked
shape	يُشكّل	shaped	shaped
mix	يخلط	mixed	mixed
display	يعرض	displayed	displayed
admire	يُعجب بـ	admired	admired

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
know	يعرف	knew	known
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
take	يأخذ	took	taken
see	يرى	saw	seen
cut	يقطع	cut	cut
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
speak	يتحدث / يتكلم	spoke	spoken

Definitions تعريفات

whisper	to speak quietly so only one or two people could hear
canvas	the surface (often cloth) an artist paint on
paintbrush	a soft tool used by artists to put paint on a picture
palette	a flat board artists use to mix colors
carve	to cut or shape wood or stone to make art
sculpture	a piece of art made by shaping stone, wood, or metal
masterpiece	a beautiful piece of art made with great skill



Listen, look, and repeat:



You know, Lily was a young **artist** who loved to draw. So, one Saturday, her family took her to, a big art gallery. Oh, she was so excited!

كما تعلم، كانت ليلي فنانة شابة تحب الرسم. وفي يوم من أيام

السبت، أخذتها عائلتها إلى معرض فني كبير. وكانت متحمسة جدًا!

"Wow," she whispered. "Look at that!" First, she saw these huge paintings on a **canvas**. "Mmm," she said, "I wish I had my **paintbrush** and **palette** with me right now!" Then, they walked into a room with beautiful **pottery** and a giant wooden **statue** that an artist used to **carve**. It looked so strong and powerful!

همست قائلة: "واو، انظر إلى ذلك!" في البداية، رأت لوحات ضخمة على قماش. وقالت: "هممم، أتمنى لو كانت معي فرشاة الرسم ولوحة الألوان الآن!" ثم دخلوا غرفة تحتوي على فخار جميل وتمثال خشبي ضخم قام فنان بنحته. بدا قويًا جدًا ومهيبة!

Lily also loved a strange, colorful **sculpture**. She even saw a huge, bright mural on the wall. Her mom pointed to a very old painting. "This," she said, "is a **masterpiece**." Lily felt so inspired by everything she saw. She couldn't wait to go home and start her own masterpiece right away!

أحبت ليلي أيضًا منحوتة غريبة وملونة بشكل زاهٍ. ورأت كذلك لوحة جدارية ضخمة ومشقة على الحائط. أشارت والدتها إلى لوحة قديمة جدًا وقالت: "هذه تحفة فنية." شعرت ليلي بإلهام كبير من كل ما رآته، ولم تستطع الانتظار حتى تعود إلى المنزل وتبدأ في رسم تحفتها الفنية الخاصة على الفور!

Choose the correct answer:



Student's
Book

1. Where did Lily's family take her on Saturday?
 - a) To the park b) To a cinema
 - c) To the zoo d) To an art gallery
2. What did Lily wish she had with her at the gallery?
 - a) Her paintbrush and palette b) Her school books
 - c) Her favorite toy d) Her lunch box
3. What did the artist use to carve the wooden statue?
 - a) A knife b) Paint
 - c) A hammer d) Wood
4. What did Lily's mom call a "masterpiece"?
 - a) The giant wooden statue
 - b) A very old painting
 - c) The colorful sculpture
 - d) The bright mural
5. How did Lily feel after visiting the gallery?
 - a) Tired b) Angry
 - c) Inspired d) Bored

Fill in the blanks using words from the box:



**whispered – canvas – palette
– sculpture – masterpiece**

1. The artist used a to mix red, blue, and yellow colors.
2. The teacher asked the students to paint on a large
3. The little girl a secret to her best friend during art class.
4. The museum displayed a beautiful stone of an ancient king.
5. The artist's final painting was a true that everyone admired.

Exercises on Lesson 1

1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Lily to her mom in the gallery because she didn't want to annoy others.
a) shouted b) whispered c) sang d) laughed
2. The painting on the wall was so beautiful that everyone said it was a
a) mistake b) picture c) masterpiece d) copy
3. Mona mixed her colors carefully on her before painting.
a) desk b) brush c) paper d) palette
4. The man used a sharp to carve the wooden statue.
a) brush b) knife c) pen d) ruler
5. Lily saw a large wooden of a horse in the middle of the room.
a) sculpture b) painting c) frame d) mural
6. She saw a huge, bright mural the wall.
a) at b) in c) by d) on
7. The wall had a smooth after it was painted.
a) picture b) color c) surface d) corner

8. The artist used a knife to a bird out of wood.
 a) draw b) carve c) paint d) clean
9. Adam put the white on the stand and started painting.
 a) art b) clay c) canvas d) palette
10. Don't tell anyone. It's a!
 a) mistake b) plan c) story d) secret

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

whispered - palette - masterpiece - carve - canvas

The art show was full of beautiful things to see. An artist mixed bright colors on his ① and began to paint on a ②
 A young girl ③ to her friend about a tall sculpture of a king nearby. When the painting was finished, everyone said it was a true ④ It was a wonderful art show.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Lily was a young artist who loved to draw and paint in her free time. One sunny weekend, her family took her to a big art gallery in the city. She saw many beautiful paintings, a giant wooden statue, and a bright, colorful sculpture. Her mom pointed to an old painting and said, "This is a masterpiece." Lily felt so excited and inspired by everything she saw. When she got home, she couldn't wait to start her own masterpiece right away!

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Lily was a young artist who loved to
 a) read b) draw c) write d) sing
2. Lily saw a statue.
 a) plastic b) clay c) wooden d) metal



Answer the following questions:

3. How did Lily feel when she visited the gallery?

.....

4. What did Lily's mom call a masterpiece?

.....

5. Give a suitable title to the text.

.....



Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. gallery - in - many - saw - She - paintings - the.

.....

2. painted - mural - wall - on the - a colorful - artist - The.

.....

3. did - When - start - he - carving - his - sculpture?

..... ?

4. inspired by - art - the - felt - Hana.

.....



Punctuate the following:

1. she saw a huge bright mural on the wall.

.....

2. how did they make this sculpture

.....



Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"A Visit to the Art Gallery"



▶ What did you see in the gallery?

▶ How did you feel?

.....

.....

.....

Lesson 2

What's in the Frame?



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



creativity

إبداع



frame

إطار



photograph

صورة فوتوغرافية



painting

لوحة فنية

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

visitors	زوّار	poem	قصيدة
tools	أدوات	clay	طين / صلصال
artists	فنانون	studio	مرسم / استوديو
figure	شكل / هيئة	stone	حجر
choice	اختيار	everywhere	في كل مكان
either	إما	imagination	خيال
both	كلاهما	shelf	رف
images	صور	quietly	بهدوء
artwork	عمل فني	pieces	قطع / أجزاء
talent	موهبة	forever	إلى الأبد

Adjectives

صفات

boring	ممل	true	حقيقي
alive	حيّ	modern	حديث / عصري
crowded	مزدحم	perfect	مثالي
difficult	صعب	special	مميز

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

seem alive	يبدو حيًا	instead of	بدلاً من
piece of art	قطعة فنية	shape into ...	يشكّل على هيئة...
whisper about	يهمس بشأن	speak to	يتحدث إلى
full of	مليء بـ	known as	معروف باسم
inside	في الداخل	on the shelf	على الرف
stand quietly	يقف بهدوء	tell a story	يروى قصة
according to	طبقاً لـ	take photos	يلتقط صورًا

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
create	ينشئ / يُبدع	created	created
prefer	يفضّل	preferred	preferred
describe	يصف	described	described
dance	يرقص	danced	danced
unleash	يطلق العنان	unleashed	unleashed
practice	يتدرّب / يمارس	practiced	practiced

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
become	يصبح	became	become
find	يجد	found	found
write	يكتب	wrote	written
show	يُظهر / يعرض	showed	shown
tell	يروى	told	told



Read and learn



Every frame tells a story. Inside a frame, there can be **either** a painting **or** a photograph that shows something special. Artists use their **paintbrush** and palette to mix colors and create beautiful images on a canvas.



كل إطار يروي قصة. داخل الإطار، يمكن أن توجد لوحة فنية أو صورة فوتوغرافية تُظهر شيئاً مميزاً. يستخدم الفنانون فرشاتهم ولوحة الألوان لمزج الألوان وابتكار صور جميلة على اللوحة.

Some artists prefer **sculpture**, while others enjoy painting, but both types of art show talent and creativity. Great artists can **carve** wood or stone to make strong shapes that seem alive!

بعض الفنانين يفضلون النحت، بينما يستمتع آخرون بالرسم، لكن كلا النوعين من الفن يُظهران الموهبة والإبداع. الفنانون العظماء يمكنهم نحت الخشب أو الحجر لتشكيل أشكال قوية تبدو وكأنها حية!

Not every artwork is famous, but some become masterpieces that people remember forever. Inside a gallery, you can find **both** modern **and** old pieces of art. Sometimes, visitors stand quietly and **whisper** to each other about what they see.

ليست كل الأعمال الفنية مشهورة، لكن بعضها يتحول إلى تحف فنية يتذكرها الناس إلى الأبد. داخل المعرض، يمكنك العثور على قطع فنية حديثة وقديمة. أحياناً، يقف الزوار بهدوء وهم يهمسون لبعضهم البعض عما يرونه.

Art is everywhere; it's neither boring nor difficult. It's full of color, feeling, and imagination!

الفن موجود في كل مكان؛ فهو ليس مملاً ولا صعباً، بل مليء بالألوان والمشاعر والخيال!

Read and write T (True) or F (False):



1. Every frame always has a sculpture inside. (.....)
2. Artists use a paintbrush and palette to mix colors. (.....)
3. Both painting and sculpture show creativity. (.....)
4. All artworks become famous masterpieces. (.....)
5. Art is described as neither boring nor difficult. (.....)

Choose the correct answer:



1. What can be found inside a frame?

a) A song	b) A photograph or painting
c) A sculpture	d) A poem
2. What tools do artists use to mix colors?

a) Canvas and hammer	b) Wood and clay
c) Stone and knife	d) Paintbrush and palette
3. According to the text, what can visitors do in a gallery?

a) Whisper to each other	b) Sing songs
c) Write stories	d) Dance around

Language In Use



Conjunction Pairs

أدوات العطف المترابطة

either ... or / neither ... nor / both ... and

Usage

- We use **either...or** when we want to show that there is a choice between two things/options.

نستخدم **either...or** بمعنى "إما... أو..." عندما نريد أن نوضح أن هناك اختيارًا بين شيئين أو احتمالين.

- We use **either or** to present two positive choices.

نستخدم **either or** لتقديم خيارين إيجابيين.

Examples:

- ▶ You can hang **either** a painting **or** a photo inside the frame.
يمكنك تعليق إما لوحة فنية أو صورة فوتوغرافية داخل الإطار.
- ▶ We can travel **either** by train **or** by bus.
يمكننا السفر إما بالقطار أو بالحافلة.

- We use **neither...nor** to say that both two things are untrue or do not happen.

نستخدم **neither...nor** بمعنى "لا هذا ولا ذاك" للتعبير عن أن كلا الأمرين غير صحيحين أو لا يحدثان.

- We use **neither nor** to present two negative options.

نستخدم **neither nor** لتقديم خيارين سلبيين.

Examples:

- ▶ Art is **neither** boring **nor** hard.
الفن ليس مملاً ولا معقداً.
- ▶ She is **neither** angry **nor** sad.
هي ليست غاضبة ولا حزينة.

- We use **both...and** to express that two things are true or happen together at the same time.

نستخدم **both...and** بمعنى كلا... و... للتعبير عن أن شيئين صحيحان أو يحدثان معاً في نفس الوقت.

Examples:

- ▶ **Both** painting **and** sculpture show imagination and skill.
كلا من الرسم والنحت يُظهران الخيال والمهارة.
- ▶ **Both** my brother **and** my sister love music.
كلا من أخي وأختي يحبان الموسيقى.

Choose the correct answer:

- 1.** Inside the frame, you can find a painting
a photograph.
- a) neither ... nor
c) both ... and
- b) either ... or
d) so ... or
- 2.** Art is boring difficult; it is exciting and
creative.
- a) either ... or
c) neither ... nor
- b) both ... and
d) so ... and
- 3.** painting sculpture show talent and
imagination.
- a) Neither ... nor
c) Both ... and
- b) Either ... or
d) So ... and
- 4.** You can use a paintbrush a palette to
create your artwork.
- a) both ... and
c) neither ... nor
- b) either ... or
d) so ... or
- 5.** The gallery shows old artworks modern
masterpieces.
- a) both ... and
c) either ... or
- b) neither ... nor
d) so ... and

Extra Practice on Grammar

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- You can see either a mural a sketch at the exhibition.
a) nor b) and c) or d) both
- Art is boring nor difficult; it's inspiring and creative.
a) either b) neither c) both d) so
- murals and sculptures show amazing talent and creativity.
a) Both b) Either c) Neither d) So

4. Neither Monday Friday is a holiday.
 a) and b) or c) nor d) both
5. You can use a brush or clay to create your artwork.
 a) neither b) either c) both d) so
6. Amal used both a sketch a mural to finish her project.
 a) nor b) and c) or d) both
7. Visitors can admire either a painting a sculpture at the gallery.
 a) nor b) and c) or d) both
8. Both the painter the sculptor enjoyed showing their work to the audience.
 a) nor b) and c) or d) so
9. Neither rain snow falls in the desert.
 a) nor b) or c) and d) both
10. You can create either a mural a tiny sketch for your assignment.
 a) nor b) or c) and d) both
11. The exhibition was full of both incredible talent creativity.
 a) nor b) or c) and d) both
12. You can display either pottery a painting at the gallery.
 a) nor b) both c) and d) or
13. Both the university student the woman artist were very talented.
 a) nor b) and c) or d) so
14. The exhibition displays both tiny sculptures huge murals.
 a) and b) or c) nor d) both
15. Neither chocolate candy is good to eat every day.
 a) and b) or c) nor d) both

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. You can visit either the art gallery (and) the history museum this weekend.
2. We can travel either by train (and) by bus to the city.
3. My brother is neither tall (or) short; he's of medium height.
4. (Either) the teacher nor the students were late for class.

Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The artist used a wooden to hold his painting safely.
a) shelf b) frame c) palette d) brush
2. Inside the frame, there was a beautiful of a sunset.
a) sculpture b) photograph c) story d) poem
3. Mona's sculpture looked so real that it seemed
a) difficult b) boring c) alive d) awful
4. The students showed great while working on their art projects.
a) creativity b) figure c) history d) shape
5. The famous artist worked in his bright and quiet
a) shelf b) school c) office d) studio
6. You can hang either a photograph a painting inside the frame.
a) nor b) and c) or d) and
7. Art is boring nor difficult; it's exciting and creative.
a) either b) neither c) both d) so
8. painting and sculpture show great talent and imagination.
a) Both b) Either c) Neither d) So
9. You can use a brush or a palette to mix your colors.
a) neither b) so c) both d) either
10. Adam used both a brush a palette to finish his painting.
a) nor b) and c) or d) both

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

frame - creativity - sculpture - carve - gallery

Last weekend, we visited a place full of beautiful artwork. The art
 ① was full of visitors who admired many wonderful pieces.
 One artist decided to ② a small animal from stone. Another
 artist showed a painting inside a golden ③ Everyone said
 that the art show was full of color and ④

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Lina was an art student who loved both painting and sculpture. Every weekend, she went to her teacher's studio to practice, as she enjoyed making sculptures. One day, she created a small clay sculpture that looked almost alive. Her teacher smiled and said, "This is your best artwork yet!" Later, Lina took her sculpture to the gallery, where many visitors stopped to admire it. She felt proud and decided to keep practicing until she could make a real masterpiece.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Lina made her sculpture from
 a) wood b) stone c) clay d) paper
2. Lina took her sculpture to the
 a) garden b) gallery c) park d) school

B Answer the following questions:

3. What did Lina enjoy doing every weekend?
 ▶
4. What did her teacher say about her sculpture?
 ▶
5. Give a suitable title to the text.
 ▶

4

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. painting - drew - a beautiful - He - of - the sea.



2. full - gallery - visitors - The - of - was.



3. alive - sculpture - The - seemed - and - perfect.



4. proudly - her - own - She - masterpiece - created.



5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. You can hang either the small frame (nor) the large one on the wall.

2. The sculpture was neither big (or) heavy, but it looked perfect.

3. Both the teacher (or) the students enjoyed the art lesson.

4. You can (both) read or watch a movie in your free time.

6

Punctuate the following:

1. she stood quietly and looked at the painting



2. which type of art do you prefer



7

Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"My Favorite Artwork"



▶ What did you see in the gallery?

▶ How did you feel?

Lesson 3

An Egyptian Masterpiece



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



talented

موهوب



incredible

رائع / لا يُصدق



mural

لوحة جدارية



sketch

رسم تخطيطي



art exhibition

معرض فني



Sphinx

أبو الهول

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

university student

طالب جامعي

pottery

الفخار / صناعة الفخار

truly

حقًا / فعلاً

painter

رَسَّام

Adjectives

صفات

Egyptian

مصري

tiny

صغير جدًا

amazing

مذهل

interesting

ممتع - شيق

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

absolutely

بالتأكيد / تمامًا إلى ذلك

at the exhibition

في المعرض

working on

يعمل على

his most famous masterpiece

تحفته الفنية الأكثر شهرة

next to

بجانب

talk about

يتحدث عن

used to

كان معتاد أن

at university

في الجامعة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
visit	يزور	visited	visited
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	imagined
impress	يُعجب / يُدهش	impressed	impressed
call	يُسمى	called	called

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
begin	يبدأ	began	begun
make	يصنع	made	made



Read and learn



Ali : Karim, remember that amazing art exhibition we visited last month? It was about a truly **talented** Egyptian artist.

علي: كريم، هل تتذكر ذلك المعرض الفني الرائع الذي زرناه الشهر الماضي؟ كان عن فنان مصري



Karim: Oh, yes! It was about Mahmoud Mokhtar. He made a big statue called Nahdit Masr. It shows a woman and a sphinx. I cannot imagine how he began to carve this huge statue.

كريم: نعم، بالطبع! كان عن محمود مختار. لقد صنع تمثالاً كبيراً يُسمّى نهضة مصر. يُظهر امرأة وأبو الهول. لا أستطيع أن أتخيل كيف بدأ بنحت هذا التمثال الضخم.

Ali: I know! The sculpture was absolutely **incredible**. I also saw his first **sketch** for it. But I definitely preferred his paintings. Did you see the beautiful **mural** he created?

علي: أعلم! كان التمثال المنحوت مذهلاً حقاً. كما رأيت أول رسم تخطيطي له. لكنني بالتأكيد فضلت لوحاته. هل رأيت اللوحة الجدارية الجميلة التي أبدعها؟

Karim: I did! And I saw the small canvas he painted when he was a university student. It was right next to **both** his old palette **and** a tiny paintbrush. His pottery room was also very interesting. He really was a talented artist.

كريم: رأيته! وشاهدت أيضاً اللوحة الصغيرة التي رسمها عندما كان طالباً جامعياً. كانت بجانب كلٍّ من لوح الألوان القديم وفرشاة الرسم الصغيرة الخاصة به. كانت غرفة الفخار الخاصة به مثيرةً للاهتمام أيضاً. لقد كان حقاً فناناً موهوباً.

Read and write T (True) or F (False):



Student's
Book

1. Mahmoud Mokhtar was a painter only and didn't make any sculptures. (.....)
2. Karim's favorite artwork was "Nahdit Masr." (.....)
3. Ali preferred Mahmoud Mokhtar's paintings to his sculptures. (.....)
4. Mahmoud Mokhtar used to paint with a big brush at university. (.....)
5. The students also saw Mokhtar's pottery room at the exhibition. (.....)

Pronunciation



- A **syllable** is a **word** or part of a word that contains one vowel sound.
المقطع الصوتي هو كلمة أو جزء من كلمة يحتوي على صوت متحرك واحد.

Examples:

(Clap the syllables while you say them:)

(صفق مقاطع الكلمة بينما تقولها:)

▶ **foot**

:1 syllable



مقطع واحد (صفقة واحدة).

▶ **football**

:2 syllables



مقطعين (صفقتين).

▶ **footballer**

:3 syllables



ثلاث مقاطع (ثلاث صفقات).

- In English, one part of a word (a syllable) is said **stronger** and **louder** than the others. This is called word **stress**.

في اللغة الإنجليزية، يُنطق جزء واحد من الكلمة (مقطع صوتي) أقوى وأعلى من الأجزاء الأخرى. هذا ما يسمى نبر الكلمة أو "التشديد".

Examples:

▶ **farmer**: **FARM**-er

▶ **football**: **foot**-**BALL**

- Sometimes, changing the stress changes the meaning of the word!
في بعض الأحيان، يؤدي تغيير نبر الكلمة أو "التشديد" إلى تغيير معناها!

Examples:

▶ **PRE**sent (noun) a gift

اسم بمعنى هدية

▶ **pre**SENT (verb) to give or show something

فعل بمعنى يقدم

▶ **RE**cord (noun) a CD or collection of music

اسم بمعنى سجل / أسطوانة (موسيقية)

▶ **re**CORD (verb) to make a sound or video recording

فعل بمعنى يسجل

Stress Rules:

① Two-Syllable Words

الكلمات المكونة من مقطعين

- Stress the first syllable in nouns and adjectives.

يُنْبَر (يُشَدِّد) المقطع الأول في الأسماء والصفات.

Examples:

TA ble	طاولة
PI cture	صورة
HA ppy	سعيد
CL ever	ماهر

② Stress the second syllable in verbs

يُنْبَر (يُشَدِّد) المقطع الثاني في الأفعال.

Examples:

be GIN	يبدأ
de CIDE	يقرر
re LAX	يسترخي
ex PLAIN	يشرح

② Three-Syllable Words

الكلمات المكونة من ثلاث مقاطع

- If the word ends with **-er** or **-ly**, stress the first syllable.

إذا انتهت الكلمة بـ (**-er**) أو (**-ly**)، يكون الضغط (التشديد) على المقطع الأول.

Examples:

MAN ager	مدير
CL everly	بذكاء
HA ppily	بسعادة
Sil ently	بصمت
TEA cher	مُعَلِّم

- If the word ends with a consonant or **-y**, stress the first syllable.
إذا انتهت الكلمة بحرف ساكن أو بـ **(-y)**، يكون الضغط (التشديد) على المقطع الأول.

Examples:

AN imal	حيوان
FAM ily	عائلة
CHE mistry	الكيمياء

HIS Tory	التاريخ
CEM ent	إسمنت
COM edy	كوميديا / فكاهة

Write the number of syllables next to the word:

- | | | |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1. book (.....) | 2. pencil (.....) | 3. jungle (.....) |
| 4. train (.....) | 5. elephant (.....) | 6. notebook (.....) |
| 7. run (.....) | 8. umbrella (.....) | 9. flower (.....) |
| 10. computer (.....) | 11. family (.....) | 12. sandwich (.....) |
| 13. crocodile (.....) | 14. beautiful (.....) | |

Underline the stressed syllable:

- | | | | |
|------------|------------|------------|-----------|
| 1. teacher | 2. begin | 3. explain | 4. manger |
| 5. animal | 6. explain | 7. history | 8. relax |

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- The young artist is very; she can create beautiful paintings easily.
a) tiny b) talented c) huge d) pottery
- The museum displayed a/an mural on the main wall.
a) incredible b) sphinx c) sketch d) clay
- Ahmed made a quick of the sculpture before painting it.
a) sketch b) art exhibition c) incredible d) painter

4. Students visited a/an to see modern and traditional artworks.
a) sketch b) incredible c) art exhibition d) university student
5. A can express ideas through colors, shapes, and creativity.
a) painter b) sketch c) builder d) player
6. The sculpture was so that I can put it on my hand.
a) huge b) hig c) talented d) tiny
7. You can see both lions tigers at the zoo.
a) nor b) or c) and d) both
8. You can eat either pizza burger for lunch.
a) nor b) or c) both d) and
9. Neither homework tests are fun for everyone.
a) both b) or c) and d) nor
10. You can see both a butterfly a bee in the garden.
a) nor b) or c) and d) both

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

talented - incredible - sketch - mural - sphinx

Last month, Ali and Karim visited an art exhibition. They saw works by a
 ① Egyptian artist, Mahmoud Mokhtar. One of his most famous
 sculptures was called "Nahdit Masr," which included a woman and the
 ② They also admired a small sketch he painted as a student.
 He also created a beautiful ③ on a wall. Everyone said his
 work was truly ④

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Sara visited an exhibition with her classmates. She was amazed by
 the big statue "Nahdit Masr," which was a truly wonderful sculpture.
 She also admired the artist's early sketches and a beautiful mural he
 had painted on a wall. Sara spent a long time watching the details

of each artwork. Seeing the skill and creativity of Mahmoud Mokhtar made her feel inspired. She decided to practice both painting and sculpture so that one day she could become a talented artist like him. Art is very important in our life.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- Sara spent a long time the details of each artwork.
a) visiting b) doing c) having d) watching
- Mahmoud Mokhtar's mural was painted on a
a) canvas b) wall c) table d) sculpture

B Answer the following questions:

- Who did Sara visit the exhibition with?

▶

- What inspired Sara during her visit?

▶

- Summarize the text in two sentences.

▶

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- the exhibition - was - Who - artist - the - at?

▶ ?

- exhibition - visited - last - art - month - an - They.

▶

- sculpture - huge - The - looked - alive - and.

▶

- Mariam - talented - artist - truly - is - a.

▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- Both English (or) math are important school subjects.
- You can have either pizza (and) pasta for dinner tonight.
- Both Ali (or) Omar played very well in the football match.
- (Both) Ahmed or Omar will present the project tomorrow.

6 Punctuate the following:

- do you like looking at paintings or photographs in a gallery

.....

- He made a big statue called nahdit masr.

.....

7 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"Mahmoud Mokhtar"

▶ talented - sculpture

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons 4-5

Writing Like an Artist
Think and Create

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



clay vase

مزهرة من الطين



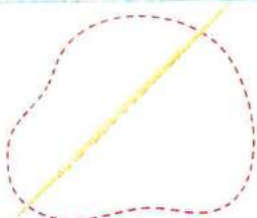
temples

معابد



patterns

نقوش / أنماط



toothpick

عود أسنان



The Grand Egyptian

Museum المتحف المصري الكبير



treasures

كنوز

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

base

قاعدة

projects

مشاريع

materials

مواد

artifacts

قطع أثرية

top

أعلى / قمة

dark blue

أزرق داكن

stuff

أشياء

King Tutankhamun

الملك توت عنخ آمون

shades

ظلال / درجات لونية

river

نهر

tools

أدوات

workshops

ورش عمل

surface

سطح

clouds

سحب

history

تاريخ

around

حول

partner	شريك	halls	قاعات
middle	منتصف	textures	خامات / نسيج السطح
design	تصميم	carefully	بعناية
mask	قناع	main header	العنوان الرئيسي

Adjectives

صفات

wide	واسع	dark	داكن
attractive	جذاب	imaginary	خيالي
round	دائري	real	حقيقي
expressive	معبر	descriptive	وصفي
narrow	ضيق	smooth	ناعم
rough	خشن	curved	منحن
pale	باهت	pointy	مدب
shiny	لامع	golden	ذهبي
clear	واضح	awesome	رائع

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

by hand	باليدين / يدويًا	on the left	على اليسار
proud of	فخور بـ	learn about	يتعلم عن / يتعرف على
work hard on	يعمل بجد على	took my time	أخذت وقتي
the history of Egypt	تاريخ مصر	looks like	يبدو كـ / يشبه
join workshops	ينضم إلى ورش عمل	in the middle	في المنتصف
switch roles	يبدّل الأدوار		

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
polish	يلمّع	polished	polished
dry	يجفّف	dried	dried
design	يصمّم	designed	designed
describe	يصف	described	described

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn
hear	يسمع	heard	heard



Read and learn



I made a colorful clay vase. It is tall, with a wide, round base and a narrow top. I used red, blue, and yellow clay to shape it carefully by hand, mixing some of the colors to create new shades. The surface feels smooth and shiny because I polished it after it dried. There are small patterns around the middle, which I made using a toothpick. I'm proud of my vase because I worked hard on the design and took my time to make it special. It's one of my favorite art projects!



لقد صنعت مزهرية ملوّنة من الطين. إنها طويلة، ذات قاعدة عريضة مستديرة و ضيقة عند القمة. استخدمت الطين الأحمر والأزرق والأصفر لتشكيلها بعناية بيدي، وخلطت بعض الألوان لابتكار درجات لونية جديدة. يبدو سطحها ناعمًا ولامعًا لأنني لمّعته بعد أن جفّ. توجد نقوش صغيرة حول المنتصف صنعتها باستخدام عود أسنان. أنا فخور بمزهرتي لأنني عملت بجد على التصميم وأخذت وقتي في صنعها لتكون مميزة. إنها واحدة من مشاريعي الفنية المفضلة!



Tip!

- A descriptive paragraph helps you show your ideas, not just tell them.

الفقرة الوصفية تساعدك على عرض أفكارك، وليس مجرد سردها.

- Using adjectives and details (like bright colors or soft clay) helps the reader imagine your art.

استخدام الصفات والتفاصيل (مثل الألوان الزاهية أو الطين الناعم) يساعد القارئ على تخيل فنك.

- It makes your writing more fun, clear, and interesting to read!

يجعل كتابتك أكثر متعة ووضوحًا وإثارة للاهتمام عند القراءة!

Example:



► "My clay statue"

I made a colorful clay statue that stands tall on my desk. Its body is round and curved, with a pointy hat on top. The surface feels smooth and soft when I touch it, but some parts are a little rough. I used bright red, pale yellow, and dark blue clay to make it look lively and fun.



Project

Making a Poster About a Famous Place in Egypt

The Grand Egyptian Museum

1



People visit the museum to see ancient treasures and statues. They learn about the history of Egypt.

يزور الناس المتحف لرؤية الكنوز والتماثيل القديمة، ويتعلمون عن تاريخ مصر.

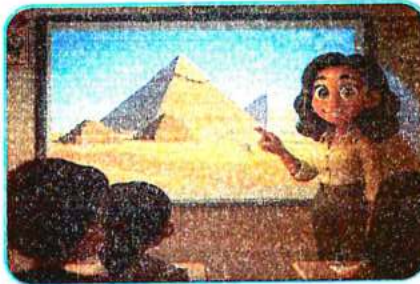
2



The museum has many beautiful halls and galleries. Visitors can see the golden mask of King Tutankhamun and other famous artifacts.

يضم المتحف على العديد من القاعات والصالات الجميلة. يمكن للزوار رؤية القناع الذهبي للملك توت عنخ آمون وغيرها من القطع الأثرية الشهيرة.

3



Students and tourists watch videos and join workshops. They learn how the ancient Egyptians built temples.

يشاهد الطلاب والسياح مقاطع الفيديو ويشاركون في الورش التعليمية. حيث يتعلمون كيف بنى المصريون القدماء المعابد.

4



After the visit, families enjoy food in the museum's garden cafe. They talk about what they saw and take photos.

بعد الزيارة، تستمتع العائلات بالطعام في مقهى حديقة المتحف، ويتحدثون عما شاهدوه ويلتقطون الصور.

Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

1 Choose the correct answer:

1. He made small around the vase using a toothpick.
a) statue b) patterns c) treasures d) temples
2. People visit the museum to see ancient and statues.
a) artifacts b) students c) workshops d) projects
3. Students join to learn how Egyptians built temples.
a) materials b) statues c) workshops d) masks
4. The vase's surface feels smooth and because it was polished.
a) rough b) shiny c) narrow d) expressive
5. Sara made a colorful vase using red, blue, and yellow clay.
a) clay b) statue c) temple d) treasure
6. The golden mask is one of the museum's most famous
a) patterns b) clay vases c) toothpicks d) treasures
7. The clay vase has tiny around the middle that I made by hand.
a) treasures b) statues c) patterns d) temples
8. The museum displayed a giant of King Ramses II.
a) temple b) statue c) vase d) pattern
9. I held a tiny to carve details into my clay vase.
a) toothpick b) statue c) treasure d) hall
10. Students and tourists watch videos and workshops.
a) try b) polish c) dry d) join

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

polished - workshop - treasures - smooth - patterns

Last week, Sara made a clay vase as part of her art project. She added small ① around the middle using a toothpick. After it dried, she ② the surface so it became very shiny. At the museum, she saw ancient ③ and joined a ④ to learn more about Egyptian art.

3

Read the text and answer the questions:

Adam made a colorful clay vase. It is tall, with a wide, round base and a narrow top. He used red, blue, and yellow clay to shape it carefully by hand, mixing some of the colors to create new shades. The surface feels smooth and shiny because he polished it after it dried. There are small patterns around the middle, which he made using a toothpick. He is proud of my vase because he worked hard on the design and took his time to make it special. It's one of his favorite art projects!

A

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Adam used a to make the small patterns.

a) brush

b) toothpick

c) clay

d) pencil

2. He feels of his final work.

a) proud

b) sad

c) angry

d) shiny

B

Answer the following questions:

3. Why does the surface of the vase feel shiny?



4. Summarize the text in one sentence.



5. Describe the vase Adam made.



4

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. by hand - vase - colorful - I - made - a - clay.



2. ancient - workshops - Students - in - learn about - temples.



3. museum - The - treasures - has - many - and - artifacts.



4. and - surface - The - smooth - is - shiny - both.



5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Both red (or) yellow shades were used in the vase.
2. Inside a frame, there can be (neither) a painting or a photograph

6 Punctuate the following:

1. students and tourists watch videos and join workshops

▶

2. i made a colorful clay vase

▶

7 Write an informal email of SIXTY (60) to you friend Ali:

Tell him about your last artwork. Your name is Adam, and your email address is adam@gmail.com. Your friend's name is Ali, and his email is ali@gmail.com.

⋮
📍 ⭐ 📎 A 🗑️

From :

To :

Subject :

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Review on Unit 1

Main Vocabulary

whisper	يهمس	wide	واسع
canvas	قماش الرسم	attractive	جذاب
paintbrush	فرشاة رسم	round	دائري
palette	لوحة الألوان	expressive	معبر
carve	ينحت / يحفر	narrow	ضيق
creativity	إبداع	rough	خشن
frame	إطار	pale	باهت
photograph	صورة فوتوغرافية	shiny	لامع
painting	لوحة فنية	clear	واضح
talent	موهبة	awesome	رائع
talented	موهوب	imaginary	خيالي
incredible	رائع / لا يُصدق	golden	ذهبي
mural	لوحة جدارية	real	حقيقي
sketch	رسم تخطيطي	pointy	مدبب
Sphinx	أبو الهول	descriptive	وصفي
art exhibition	معرض فني	smooth	ناعم
masterpiece	تحفة فنية	curved	منحن
art gallery	معرض فني	sculpture	تمثال منحوت
artist	فنان	pottery	الفخار

Conjunction Pairs أدوات العطف المترابطة

Usage

- We use **either...or** when we want to show that there is a choice between two things/options.
▶ You can hang **either** a painting **or** a photo inside the frame.
- We use **neither...nor** to say that both two things are untrue or do not happen.
▶ Art is **neither** boring **nor** hard.
- We use **both...and** to express that two things are true or happen together at the same time.
▶ **Both** painting **and** sculpture show imagination and skill.

Pronunciation

① Two-Syllable Words

● Nouns and adjectives stress the first syllable.

Table طاولة

● Verbs stress the second syllable.

reLAX حيوان

② Three-Syllable Words

● If the word ends with (-er) or (-ly), stress the first syllable.

Silently بصمت

● If the word ends with a consonant or -y, stress the first syllable.

ANimal حيوان

Dictation:

paintbrush	تحفة فنية
whisper	مواد
clay vase	مشهور
wooden	ورش عمل
treasures	نقوش / أنماط
creativity	قاعات
artifacts	تمثال منحوت
palette	صورة فوتوغرافية
painting	فنان
prefer	يُشكّل
modern	خيال
cloth	عمل فني
sketch	عود أسنان
surface	لوحة جدارية
descriptive	الفخار / صناعة الفخار
art gallery	مثالي
mask	ينحت / يحفر
talent	ساطع / مشرق
display	معبر
soft	متحف

Writing Skills

A Visit to the Art Gallery

Last week, I went to an art gallery. I saw many beautiful paintings and sculptures. Some showed people, nature, and bright colors. I liked how each artwork told a story. I felt happy, calm, and amazed by the artists' work. My favorite thing was a huge, shiny clay vase. It was a wonderful and enjoyable visit.

My Favorite Artwork

My favorite artwork is a painting of a sunset over the sea. It shows the bright colors of the sky and the calm waves of the water. I think it is special because it makes me feel peaceful and reminds me of nature's beauty and quiet moments.

Mahmoud Mokhtar

Mahmoud Mokhtar was a talented Egyptian artist known for his amazing sculptures. He created beautiful works that showed Egypt's history and spirit. One of his famous sculptures was inspired by the Sphinx. His art made people proud of their culture and showed his great love for his country.



Search

From : adam@gmail.com

To : ali@gmail.com

Subject : My Last Artwork

Hi Ali,

How are you? I just finished my last artwork, and I'm very proud of it. It's a painting of a beautiful garden full of colorful flowers and butterflies. I used bright colors to make it look cheerful and full of life. It reminds me of spring mornings and makes me feel happy whenever I see it.

Your friend,
Adam



Test 1 on Unit 1

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

Total

60

1

Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

(10Ms)

canvas - talented - amazing - gallery - sculpture - sketch

Hana : Where did you go last weekend, Laila?

Laila : I went to the new art ① It was full of wonderful artworks.

Hana : Wow, that sounds great! Did you see any paintings?

Laila : Yes, I saw a huge painting on a ② I also saw a large wooden ③ of a horse.

Hana : That's amazing. Did the artists start with a quick ④?

Laila : Yes, they did. It was clear that every artist there was truly ⑤!

2

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

(10Ms)

- Neither the artist (or) the student finished the drawing.
- Both the teacher (nor) the class enjoyed the art lesson.
- You can choose (neither) the blue vase or the red one.
- The sculpture is neither old (and) valuable.
- (Neither) the picture and the frame need cleaning.

3

Choose the correct answer:

(10Ms)

- My sister felt very (inspired - soft - tired) by the famous artist's work.
- The gallery shows (either - neither - both) old artworks and modern masterpieces.

3. The visitors stood quietly and (**shouted** - **admired** - **carved**) the ancient paintings.
4. She loved to draw on a cloth surface called a (**mural** - **palette** - **canvas**).
5. The large sculpture was (**both** - **either** - **neither**) powerful and impressive, attracting everyone's attention.
6. You can find either a painting (**nor** - **and** - **or**) a photograph inside the frame.
7. Mahmoud Mokhtar's "Nahdit Masr" statue is considered his most famous (**palette** - **masterpiece** - **skill**).
8. The wall had a smooth (**metal** - **surface** - **stone**) after the painter finished the mural.
9. Art is (**either** - **both** - **neither**) boring nor difficult; it is exciting and creative.
10. The artist displayed both the statue (**or** - **nor** - **and**) the canvas at the exhibition.

4 Read and circle the odd one out, and replace it with a correct one: (10Ms)

1. whisper - shout - carve - painting
2. palette - talented - paintbrush - canvas
3. amazing - pottery - painting - drawing
4. strong - powerful - excited - masterpiece
5. inspired - create - know - shape

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10Ms)

Omar was excited to visit the art gallery. He saw a masterpiece painted on a huge canvas. An artist was using a paintbrush and palette to mix colorful paints. Omar whispered to his mother about a stone sculpture. He felt inspired to go home and try to create his own art. It was an exciting day.

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Omar saw a masterpiece painted on a huge canvas at the art gallery. (.....)
2. The artist was carving wood when Omar visited. (.....)
3. Omar felt inspired to create his own art after seeing the sculpture. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

4. Omar felt (angry - bored - inspired) by the art he saw.
5. The masterpiece was painted on a large (book - canvas - knife).

- 6** Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements: (10Ms)

"A Talented Egyptian Artist"

▶ What was he famous for?

▶ What is the name of his most famous masterpiece?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 2 on Unit 1

Total

30

1

Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:



(2Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1. Omar visited the art gallery with his family on Saturday. (.....)
2. Omar saw many colorful paintings and a stone sculpture. (.....)
3. Omar's sister whispered, "Look at that masterpiece!" (.....)
4. They bought postcards from the museum shop before leaving. (.....)

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(2Ms)

1. The artist mixed colors carefully on his before painting.
 a) canvas b) palette c) brush d) knife
2. Ahmed used a knife to a bird from wood.
 a) draw b) carve c) paint d) mix
3. The artist used both a paintbrush a palette to finish the masterpiece.
 a) and b) nor c) or d) but
4. The artwork was both interesting colorful.
 a) or b) nor c) and d) but

3

Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

frame - mural - sculpture - gallery - talent

Last week, I had a wonderful day. I visited a new art ① which was full of wonderful pieces. Many students showed great creativity in their work. One artist displayed a large stone ② that looked alive. Another artist hung a beautiful painting inside a golden ③ Everyone admired the artists' ④ and hard work.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

(7Ms)

Noor is a creative student who enjoys visiting art galleries in her free time. Last Friday, she went to a large art exhibition with her classmates. Inside, she saw colorful paintings, bright murals, and a beautiful sculpture made of stone. Her teacher explained how artists use paintbrushes and palettes to mix colors and show their ideas. Noor was amazed by the details and whispered, "This is a real masterpiece!" When she returned home, she started painting her own picture about Egypt's history and beauty.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Noor went to a large art exhibition with her
a) family b) classmates c) cousins d) neighbors
2. Nour's explained how artists use paintbrushes and palettes to mix colors.
a) parents b) guide c) friends d) teacher

B Answer the following questions:

3. What did Noor see inside the exhibition?
▶
4. Summarize the text in one sentence.
▶
5. What did Nour do when she returned home?
▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:
(4Ms)

1. Neither the museum (or) the gallery was open today.
2. (Neither) the painting and the sculpture were beautiful.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2Ms)

1. creativity - full - of - Art - is - and - imagination.

▶

2. her - displayed - the gallery - in - work - She.

▶

7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. i saw a huge bright mural on the wall

▶

2. both ali and Karim admired the pottery.

▶

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below: (7Ms)

"A Visit to the Art Gallery"

- ▶ What did you see there?
▶ How did you feel?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Wonderful Inventions

اختراعات رائعة

Unit 2

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit, students will be able to:

Listening

Identify the main ideas and specific details in short talks or interviews about inventions and inventors

Follow step-by-step spoken instructions for using or building a gadget

Identify key vocabulary and phrases related to inventions while listening.

Speaking

- Describe an invention and explain how it works using clear sentences
- Discuss problems and brainstorm creative gadget ideas
- Present and describe a model or drawing of an invention clearly to others.

Reading

Identify key vocabulary words related to ancient and modern inventions

Identify the main ideas and the sequence of events in a text

Recognize and understand the meaning of prefixes (re-, un-) in context.

Writing

- Write a short paragraph describing an invention idea, explaining its purpose, design, and benefits
- Use key vocabulary and relative pronouns (who, which, that, whose) correctly in writing
- Create a simple blueprint or design for a new gadget.

Lesson 1

The Brilliant Engineer

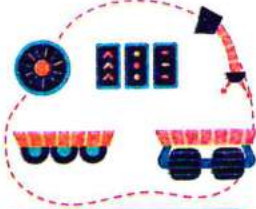


Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية

**invention**

اختراع

**gadgets**

أدوات صغيرة

**blueprint**

مخطط / تصميم

**tools**

أدوات

**assemble**

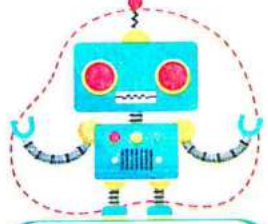
يركّب / يجمع

**improve**

يُحسّن / يُطوّر

**solar power**

الطاقة الشمسية

**robot**

روبوت

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

product

منتج

engineer

مهندس

wheels

عجلات

indoors

في الداخل

drawing

رسم

painting kit

مجموعة الرسم

battery power

طاقة البطارية

wind energy

طاقة الرياح

idea

فكرة

steps

خطوات

model

نموذج

show

عرض / برنامج

interviewer

محاوّر

easily

بسهولة

method

طريقة

machine	آلة	device	جهاز
instrument	أداة / آلة	electricity	كهرباء
flying carpet	سجادة طائرة	voice	صوت
telescope	تلسكوب / منظار	completely	تمامًا

Adjectives صفات

detailed	مفصل	solar	شمسي
talented	موهوب	whole	كاملاً
musical	موسيقي	amazing	مذهل
effective	فعال	expensive	غالي / مرتفع الثمن
difficult	صعب	brilliant	رائع / لامع
useful	مفيد	clear	واضح
young	شاب / صغير	friendly	ودود / لطيف

Expressions and Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر

put parts together	يركب الأجزاء معًا	that feels like	الذي يشبه / الذي يبدو كـ
Welcome back!	مرحبًا بكم مرة أخرى!	Let's get started!	هيا نبدأ!
for the first time	للمرة الأولى	tell about	يخبر عن / يتحدث عن
in the sun	في الشمس	too difficult to build	صعب جدًا أن يُبنى
by wind energy	بطاقة الرياح	work properly	يعمل بشكل صحيح
run on	يعمل بـ		

Definitions تعريفات

blueprint	detailed plan or drawing for making something
assemble	to put parts together to make a whole
improve	to make something better, or more effective

tools

things used to fix, build, or create things

invention

a new idea, product, or method created for the first time

gadget

a small, useful device or tool

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
design	يَصمِّم	designed	designed
fix	يُصلَح / يَثْبِت	fixed	fixed
assemble	يُرْكِّب / يجمع	assembled	assembled
create	يبتكر / يُبدع	created	created
ignore	يتجاهل	ignored	ignored
improve	يُحسِّن / يُطوِّر	improved	improved
replace	يستبدل / يُبدِّل	replaced	replaced
host	يستضيف / يُقدِّم	hosted	hosted
explore	يستكشف	explored	explored
follow	يتبع	followed	followed
innovate	يبتكر / يجدد	innovated	innovated
test	يختبر / يُجَرِّب	tested	tested

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
build	يبني	built	built
put	يضع	put	put

Present

show

يُظهر / يعرض

Past

showed

PP

shown

take apart

يفكك / يحلل الى اجزاء

took apart

taken apart

Read and learn

A clear, friendly voice, as if hosting a show

بصوت واضح وودود، كما لو كنت تقدم برنامجاً



Interviewer

: Welcome back! Today, we have a talented young engineer here with an amazing invention—the solar robot kit. Can you tell us more about this gadget?



المحاور: مرحباً بكم مرة أخرى! اليوم، معنا مهندس شاب موهوب لديه اختراع مذهل - مجموعة روبوت تعمل بالطاقة الشمسية. هل يمكنك أن تخبرنا المزيد عن هذه الأداة؟

Young Engineer:

Thank you! I wanted to create a simple gadget that feels like a small machine. The first step was designing a detailed blueprint.

المهندس الشاب: شكراً لك! أردت أن أصنع أداة بسيطة تشبه آلة صغيرة. كانت الخطوة الأولى تصميم مخطط مفصل.

Interviewer

: Wow! How do we use it?

المحاور: رائع! كيف نستخدمها؟

Young Engineer:

First, you assemble the small parts using the right tools. The robot runs on solar power, so the wheels move when you place it in the sun. If something isn't working, you can easily improve it. This invention is a fun way to explore new ideas every day. Let's get started!

المهندس الشاب: أولاً، تقوم بتجميع الأجزاء الصغيرة باستخدام الأدوات المناسبة. يعمل الروبوت بالطاقة الشمسية، لذا تتحرك العجلات عند وضعه في الشمس. إذا لم يعمل شيء بشكل صحيح، يمكنك تحسينه بسهولة. هذا الاختراع طريقة ممتعة لاستكشاف أفكار جديدة كل يوم. هيا لنبدأ!



Choose the correct answer:

1. What is the invention that the young engineer shows?
 - a) A painting kit
 - b) A solar robot gadget
 - c) A musical instrument
 - d) A telescope
2. What was the first step in creating the gadget?
 - a) Assembling the parts
 - b) Using tools
 - c) Designing a blueprint
 - d) Testing the robot in the sun
3. How do the wheels of the robot move?
 - a) By battery power
 - b) By wind energy
 - c) By solar power
 - d) By electricity
4. What should you do if a part isn't working properly?
 - a) Ignore it
 - b) Replace the blueprint
 - c) Improve it
 - d) Take the robot apart completely
5. What does the young engineer say about the invention?
 - a) It is very expensive
 - b) It is a fun way to explore new ideas
 - c) It can only be used indoors
 - d) It is too difficult to build

Exercises on Lesson 1

1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. A/An is a new idea, product, or method created for the first time.
 - a) tool
 - b) invention
 - c) problem
 - d) gadget
2. A/An is a small, useful device or tool.
 - a) gadget
 - b) machine
 - c) drawing
 - d) idea
3. A detailed plan or drawing for making something is called a
 - a) instrument
 - b) model
 - c) blueprint
 - d) solar power

4. Engineers always try to their designs to make them more effective.
 a) ignore b) improve c) follow d) replace
5. A young engineer who is very can create amazing inventions easily.
 a) musical b) solar c) expensive d) talented
6. You should always a gadget after assembling it to make sure it works properly.
 a) ignore b) test c) improve d) create
7. The telescope is a instrument that allows people to see distant stars.
 a) musical b) detailed c) useful d) useless
8. My father the pieces of our new chair to make it whole.
 a) assembled b) invented c) ignored d) innovated
9. You can your English by correcting your mistakes.
 a) follow b) ignore c) improve d) tools
10. He used special to put the parts together.
 a) plans b) drawings c) models d) tools

2 Read and complete using the words in the box:

tools - invention - blueprint - improve - test

Last week, Omar created a new gadget for his science project. He first drew a detailed ① to plan every part carefully. Then, he used special ② to put all the pieces together. After he finished, he wanted to ③ it to make it more effective. Finally, he decided to ④ the gadget to see if it worked properly.

3

Read the text and answer the questions:

Lina is a young, talented engineer who loves creating new inventions. Last week, she designed an amazing gadget that waters plants automatically. She first made a detailed blueprint and a clear drawing to plan how the device would work. Then she used special tools to assemble the parts carefully. After testing it, she improved the gadget to make it more effective and easy to use. Lina's invention uses solar power and battery power, making it a brilliant, useful, and environmentally friendly device for home gardens.



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Lina improved the gadget to make it more and easy to use.

- a) effective b) musical c) expensive d) friendly

2. The gadget uses and battery power.

- a) electricity b) solar power c) wind energy d) ideas



Answer the following questions:

3. What did Sarah do first?

▶

4. What kind of invention did Lina create?

▶

5. Give a suitable title for the text.

▶

4

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. blueprint - Omar - a - detailed - drew - first.

▶

2. gadget - assembled - the - carefully - using - tools - Lina.

▶

3. the - improved - design - She - to - effective - be.

▶

4. amazing - invention - was - useful - and - The.

▶

5 Punctuate the following:

1. adam created a gadget that waters plants

▶

2. What did omar draw before he assembled the parts

▶

6 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"My Brilliant Invention"

▶ invention - gadget

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lesson 2

The Egyptian Loom



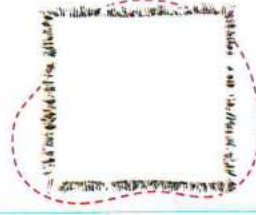
Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



fabric

قماش



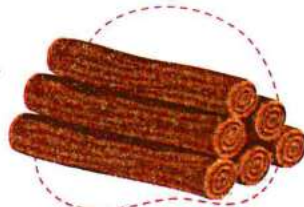
linen

كتان



threads

خيوط



wooden

خشبي



loom

نول

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

Ancient Egyptians المصريين القدماء

furniture أثاث

clothes ملابس

jewelry مجوهرات

blankets بطانيات

baskets سلال

cloth قماش

shape شكل

student طالب

still ما زال / لا يزال

carefully بعناية

carefulness الحرص / العناية

process عملية

correctly بشكل صحيح

skills مهارات

size حجم

worker عامل

creativity إبداع

pieces قطع

creation إبتكار / إبداع

Adjectives

صفات

skilled	ماهر	easier	أسهل
ready	جاهز	faster	أسرع
possible	ممکن	different	مختلف
fine	جيد / رائع	colorful	ملهيء بالألوان / زاهي
modern	حديث / عصري		

Expressions and Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر

thousands of years ago	منذ آلاف السنين	put together	يركّب / يجمّع
helped them make	ساعدهم على صنع	produce fabric	يُنتج القماش
parts needed	الأجزاء المطلوبة	draw a blueprint	يرسم مخططاً
stand strong	يقف قويّاً	assemble the loom	يركّب النول
work well	يعمل بشكل جيد	inspired by	مستوحى من
up and down	لأعلى ولأسفل	trained in	مُدْرَب على

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
train	يدرّب	trained	trained
craft	يصنع / يحترف	crafted	crafted
produce	يُنتج	produced	produced
inspire	يُلهم	inspired	inspired
paint	يرسم / يلوّن	painted	painted
require	يتطلب	required	required

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
throw	يرمي	threw	thrown
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
draw	يرسم	drew	drawn



Read the text about the Egyptian loom:

Thousands of years ago, the ancient Egyptians created an amazing **invention** called the loom, **which** helped them make clothes, blankets, and beautiful **fabrics** from **linen**. Before building a loom, an engineer or skilled worker, **who** was trained in crafting tools, would draw a **blueprint** to show the size, shape, and parts needed. Then, the workers would **assemble** the **wooden** pieces carefully so the loom, **which** needed to stand strong, could work well.



منذ آلاف السنين، ابتكر المصريون القدماء اختراعًا مذهلاً يُسمّى النول، والذي ساعدهم على صنع الملابس والبطانيات والأقمشة الجميلة من الكتان. قبل صنع النول، كان المهندس أو العامل الماهر، الذي تم تدريبه على صناعة الأدوات، يرسم مخططًا يُظهر الحجم والشكل والأجزاء المطلوبة. بعد ذلك، يقوم العمال بتركيب القطع الخشبية بعناية حتى يعمل النول الذي يجب أن يقف قويًا بشكل جيد.

Once it was ready, people used the loom to build fabric by moving **threads** up and down, a process **that** needed a lot of skills. The Egyptian loom made it possible to produce fine, colorful cloth **which** showed the creativity of ancient Egypt. Today, this ancient **invention** still inspires modern machines **that** make our clothes.

عندما أصبح النول جاهزًا، استخدمه الناس لصنع القماش عن طريق تحريك الخيوط لأعلى ولأسفل، وهي عملية تتطلب مهارات كبيرة. لقد جعل النول المصري من الممكن إنتاج قماش ناعم وملوّن يعكس إبداع المصريين القدماء. اليوم، لا يزال هذا الاختراع القديم يُلهم الآلات الحديثة التي تصنع ملابسنا.

Read and write T (True) or F (False):



Student's Book

1. The loom helped the ancient Egyptians make clothes, blankets, and fabrics. (.....)
2. Only farmers used the loom to produce fabric. (.....)
3. Engineers drew a blueprint before assembling the loom. (.....)
4. The process of using the loom required a lot of skills. (.....)
5. Modern machines are inspired by the ancient Egyptian loom. (.....)

Language In Use



Relative Pronouns

أدوات الوصل

Relative pronouns are words that join two sentences together.

أدوات الوصل هي كلمات تستخدم لربط جملتين معًا.

1 Who

الذي / التي / اللذين

used for people

تُستخدم للأشخاص

Examples:

The engineer **who** designed the robot is smart.

المهندس الذي صمّم الروبوت ذكي.

The teacher **who** teaches math is kind.

المعلم الذي يدرّس الرياضيات لطيف.

2 Whose

الذي يملك / التي تملك

used to show possession

تُستخدم للتعبير عن الملكية

Examples:

The student **whose** invention won was happy.

الطالب الذي فاز اختراعه كان سعيدًا.

I met a man **whose** car is very old.

قابلت رجلاً سيارته قديمة جدًا.

③ Which

○ used for things and animals

الذي / التي / اللذين

تُستخدم للأشياء والحيوانات

Examples:▶ The solar robot, **which** has wheels, is a cool gadget.

الروبوت الشمسي الذي له عجلات أداة رائعة.

▶ The book, **which** has colorful pictures, is fun to read.

الكتاب الذي يحتوي على صور ملونة ممتع للقراءة.

④ That

○ used for things and people

الذي / التي / اللذين

تُستخدم للأشياء والأشخاص

Examples:▶ The gadget **that** I bought broke.

الأداة الصغيرة التي اشتريتها تعطلت.

▶ The movie **that** we watched yesterday was amazing.

الفيلم الذي شاهدناه أمس كان رائعًا.

Complete the sentence using the correct relative pronoun:

1. The engineer built the loom was very clever.
2. The woman we met showed us how to weave.
3. The museum we visited had old fabrics.
4. The child toy is missing is crying.
5. This is the tool they used to make clothes.

Extra Practice on Grammar**Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The chef recipes are famous teaches at our local school.

a) who

b) whose

c) whom

d) which

2. The musician plays the violin is very young but talented.
 a) that b) whom c) whose d) which
3. The movie I recommended won several awards.
 a) who b) whom c) which d) whose
4. The castle stands on the hill was built in the 16th century.
 a) that b) who c) whose d) whom
5. The author books inspire children visited our school.
 a) which b) who c) whom d) whose
6. The letter you sent arrived this morning.
 a) which b) whose c) who d) whom
7. The man car was stolen reported it to the police.
 a) which b) who c) whom d) whose
8. The dog barked all night kept the neighbors awake.
 a) who b) that c) whose d) whom
9. The teacher helped me yesterday gave excellent advice.
 a) who b) whom c) whose d) which
10. The child parents are doctors wants to become an engineer.
 a) who b) whose c) whom d) which
11. The author wrote this novel has won many awards.
 a) who b) whose c) whom d) which
12. The artist paintings are in the gallery is very talented.
 a) who b) whose c) whom d) which

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. I spoke to the scientist, (which) experiments were on the news.
2. The film (who) we watched last night was a comedy.

3. The a new manager (which) has experience in jewelry, is very young.
4. My neighbor, (that) dog barks all night, is my aunt.
5. She is wearing a beautiful dress (who) was very expensive.
6. The students, (which) performed the play, received an award.
7. The book, (who) cover is torn, is red readable.

Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. A is a machine used to make fabrics, blankets, and clothes.
a) loom b) basket c) furniture d) jewelry
2. The table was made of parts that needed to be hard.
a) linen b) wooden c) jewelry d) colorful
3. Linen is a type of used to make clothes and fabrics.
a) threads b) wood c) fabric d) loom
4. The workers moved the threads and down to produce cloth.
a) here b) under c) across d) up
5. Before building the loom, the engineer drew a
a) blueprint b) basket c) furniture d) cloth
6. The woman painted this mural is very talented.
a) which b) whose c) who d) whom
7. The book you lent me was really interesting.
a) which b) who c) whose d) whom
8. The boy won the art contest is my cousin.
a) which b) that c) whose d) whom
9. The teacher students love art gives creative projects.
a) who b) which c) whom d) whose

10. The movie we watched , was about a famous painter.
 a) who b) whose c) that d) whom

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

loom - wooden - blueprint - carefully - fabric

Long ago, the Egyptians used a loom to make clothes and blankets. Before building it, they drew a ① to show the shape and size. The workers then assembled the ② parts. They did that ③ so it could work well and produce strong ④

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

The ancient Egyptians built special looms to make beautiful fabrics from fine linen. Skilled engineers and workers first drew detailed blueprints to show the size, shape, and parts needed for the loom. Then, they carefully put the wooden pieces together so it could stand strong and work well. Then the loom was ready, they moved the threads up and down to create soft, colorful cloth. This long process required patience, creativity, and skill. The Egyptian loom became an amazing invention.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The Egyptians made their fabric from
 a) cotton b) silk c) linen d) wool
2. The loom was made of parts.
 a) metal b) wooden c) plastic d) stone

B Answer the following questions:

3. What did the ancient Egyptians use the loom for?
4. What did the workers do before assembling the loom?

5. Give a suitable title to the text. ▶

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. moved - threads - **They** - the - up - down - and.
▶

2. did - the - Egyptians - loom - **Why** - make?
▶

3. wooden - **The** - was - loom - made - of - parts.
▶

4. carefully - workers - the - assembled - pieces - **The**.
▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. You can visit the museum (**who**) shows modern art.

2. Those students (**that**) artwork was chosen felt very proud.

3. The sculpture (**who**) stands in the park was made by local craftsmen.

4. The artist (**which**) painted this portrait is neither famous nor unknown.

6 Punctuate the following:

1. the egyptians invented the loom thousands of years ago. ▶

2. what did they make with the loom ▶

7 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"The Egyptian Loom"



▶ How did the workers assemble the loom?

▶ Why is it important today?

.....

.....

.....

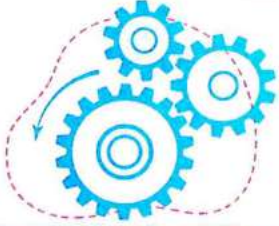
Lesson 3

The Story of the First Clock



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



gear

ترس / عجلة تروس



time

وقت



workshop

ورشة



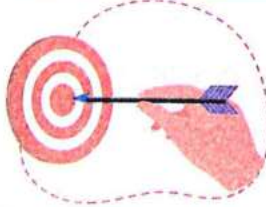
measure

يقيس / قياس



inventors

مخترعون



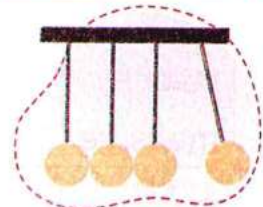
accurate

دقيق



design

تصميم / يصمم



pendulum

بندول / ثقل معلق

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

machine

آلة

second

ثانية

slowly

ببطء

tools

أدوات

Europe

أوروبا

accurately

بدقة

Adjectives

صفات

clever

ذكي

famous

مشهور

correct

صحيح

fascinating

رائع / ساحر

exciting

مثير

wrong

خطأ

exact

دقيق

broken

مكسور

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

tell the time	يحدد / يعرف الوقت	all over Europe	في كل أنحاء أوروبا
from side to side	من جانب إلى جانب	long ago	منذ زمن بعيد
made by hand	مصنوع يدويًا	make music	يصنع الموسيقى

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
store	يخزن / يحتفظ	stored	stored
invent	يخترع	invented	invented
measure	يقيس	measured	measured

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
spin	يدور	spun	spun
tell	يخبر / يقول	told	told



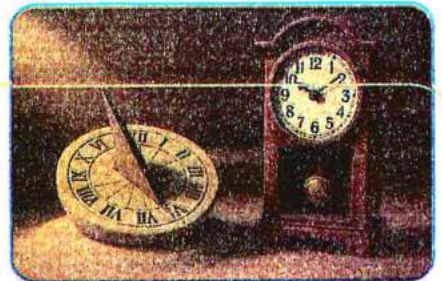
Read and learn



Long ago, people used the sun and sand to tell the **time**. Later, clever inventors built the first clock **that** used **gears** and a **pendulum**.

The pendulum, **which** moved slowly from side to side, helped the clock keep time more

accurately. One engineer, **who** studied how things move, designed a clock **that** could **measure** every second. The **workshop** where he worked was full of tools and small gears. The clock, **whose** design was new and exciting, became famous all over Europe. It was one of the fascinating inventions **that** changed how people lived and worked every day.



منذ زمن بعيد، كان الناس يستخدمون الشمس والرمل لمعرفة الوقت. لاحقًا، قام المخترعون الأذكى ببناء أول ساعة تستخدم التروس والبندول. ساعد البندول، الذي يتحرك ببطء من جانب إلى جانب، الساعة على الحفاظ على الوقت بدقة أكبر.

قام مهندس، درس حركة الأشياء، بتصميم ساعة يمكنها قياس كل ثانية. كانت الورشة التي يعمل فيها مليئة بالأدوات والتروس الصغيرة. أصبحت الساعة، التي كان تصميمها جديدًا ومثيرًا، مشهورة في كل أنحاء أوروبا. كانت واحدة من الاختراعات الرائعة التي غيرت طريقة حياة وعمل الناس كل يوم.

Read and write T (True) or F (False):



Student's Book

1. People first used clocks to measure the sun and sand. (.....)
2. The pendulum moved quickly from side to side. (.....)
3. The pendulum helped the clock keep time accurately. (.....)
4. The engineer designed a clock that could measure every second. (.....)
5. The clock's design became famous all over Europe. (.....)

Pronunciation



Prefixes

- A prefix is a small part we add to the beginning of a word.
البادئة هي جزء صغير نضيفه إلى بداية الكلمة.
- It changes the meaning of the word and sometimes changes the sound when we say it.
تغير معنى الكلمة وأحيانًا تغير نطقها عند قولها.
- ① Prefix: **re-** (إعادة / مرة أخرى)
- Meaning: again or back
المعنى: مرة أخرى أو للرجوع
- When we add **re-** to a word, it means to do something again.
عند إضافة **re-** إلى كلمة، يعني ذلك القيام بشيء مرة أخرى.

Examples:

Word	Meaning	
rebuild	build again	يعيد بناء
rewrite	write again	يعيد كتابة
recycle	use again	يعيد استخدام
return	come back	يعود
reread	read again	يعيد القراءة
redo	do again	يعيد القيام به

2 Prefix: un- (غير / عكس)

- **Meaning:** not or the opposite of

المعنى: تعطي المعنى المضاد للكلمة

- When we add **un-**, we make the meaning negative.

عند إضافة **un-**، نجعل معنى الكلمة منفيًا.

Examples:

Word	Meaning	
unhappy	not happy	ليس سعيدًا
unsafe	not safe	ليس آمنًا
unfair	not fair	ليس عادلاً
uncertain	not certain	غير مؤكد
unusual	not usual	غير عادي



- When you say **re-**, make it sound like “**ree**” before a strong syllable (like in **rebuild**), but like “**ri**” before weak ones (like **return**).

عندما تقول **re-**، اجعلها تبدو مثل “**ree**” قبل المقاطع القوية (مثل **rebuild**)، ولكن مثل “**ri**” قبل المقاطع الضعيفة (مثل **return**).

Explanation

توضيح:

- A **strong syllable** is a part of the word that is stressed or louder.

المقطع القوي هو الجزء من الكلمة الذي يُنطق بقوة أو يُشدد عليه.

- A **weak syllable** is less stressed, quieter or softer.

المقطع الضعيف هو الجزء من الكلمة الذي يُنطق أقل قوة أو بصوت أضعف.

- The stress usually stays on the **main word**, not on the prefix.

عادةً ما يظل التركيز الصوتي على الكلمة الرئيسية وليس على البادئة.

Examples:

▶ unHAPpy stress on HAP, not UN.

Circle the correct prefix and say the word aloud:



Student's Book

1. (re - un) build
2. (re - un) happy
3. (re - un) play
4. (re - un) lock
5. (re - un) write

Extra Practicing

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. We should (cycle again) plastic bottles to help the planet.
2. It was (fair not) that only one person got a prize.
3. She must (do again) her homework .It was wrong.
4. They will (build again) the house after the storm.
5. He felt (not happy) after losing the game.
6. It is (not safe) to play in the street.
7. I will (read again) the story to understand it better.
8. I am (not certain) about what will happen tomorrow.

1

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The first clock was made to help people time more easily.
a) forget b) tell c) waste d) lose
2. The engineer used a ruler to the wooden parts.
a) draw b) hold c) cut d) measure
3. The mechanic worked in a small filled with tools and gears.
a) workshop b) garden c) kitchen d) office
4. A moves slowly from side to side to help the clock keep time.
a) bell b) gear c) pendulum d) ruler
5. The clock was very; it showed the exact time without any mistake.
a) loud b) accurate c) broken d) soft
6. The old clock was by hand.
a) written b) printed c) drawn d) made
7. The new invention became all over Europe.
a) famous b) broken c) unhappy d) unknown
8. The gears worked to move the clock's hands correctly.
a) slowly b) carelessly c) together d) apart
9. People admired the clock because it was both useful and
a) exciting b) unfair c) unsafe d) lazy
10. Before clocks were invented, people used the sun to tell the
a) story b) time c) distance d) color
11. When the small inside the machine turned, the clock's hands began to move.
a) gear b) nail c) paper d) window

2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

measure - workshop - pendulum - design - accurately

Hundreds of years ago, an inventor built a clock. He built it with a special ① that moved from side to side. He worked for months in his ② to make it perfect. He wanted to build it to keep time ③ The clock, whose ④ was new and exciting, became famous all over Europe. At last, the clock was ready and became the most accurate one of its time.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

A young clockmaker named Leo wanted to build a clock that never lost time. He spent years studying how things move and how gears turn. One day, he made a small model using wood, a pendulum, and several metal gears. When the clock started working, it measured every second perfectly. People from different countries came to see Leo's invention. His clock was admired because it was beautiful, accurate and had a clever design. It was said that his work inspired other inventors to make better machines all over Europe. It was one of the fascinating inventions that changed how people lived and worked every day.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Leo spent years how things move and how gears turn.
a) studying b) doing c) working d) showing
2. People visited Leo because his clock was
a) broken b) slow c) damaged d) accurate

B Answer the following questions:

3. What materials did Leo use to make his clock?
4. How did Leo's invention inspire others?
5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. worked - gears - **The** - together - smoothly - softly - and.



2. to make - did - the clock - **What** - use - materials - he?



3. invented - **An** - first - clock - engineer - accurate - the.



4. pendulum - **The** - side to - from - side - moved.



5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Mr. Amr asked me to (**do again**) my homework.

2. It is (**usual**) to see an elephant in the street.

3. That book is very nice. I want to (**read again**) it.

6 Punctuate the following:

1. when did people start making accurate clocks



2. jana worked in a small workshop near her house



7 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"The Clockmaker's Invention"



Ideas to help you ▶

pendulum - workshop - measure

.....

.....

.....



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



structure

هيكل / بنية



supply

يزود / يمدّ



electricity

كهرباء



dam

سدّ

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

river	نهر	automatically	تلقائيًا
explanation	شرح	visit	زيارة
flood	فيضان	teamwork	العمل الجماعي
energy	طاقة	factory	مصنع
land	أرض	design	تصميم
future	مستقبل	stone	حجر
power	طاقة / قوة	idea	فكرة
supplies	لوازم / مستلزمات	buildings	مبانٍ
concrete	خرسانة	container	حاوية / علبة
sketch	رسم تخطيطي	pencil holder	حامل أقلام
internet connection	اتصال بالإنترنت	crops	محاصيل

Unit 2

Adjectives

صفات

huge	ضخم	free	مجاني / حر
smart	ذكي	southern	جنوبي
protected	محمي	separate	منفصل
powerful	قوي	tidy	مرتب
recycled	معاد تدويره	annoying	مزعج
important	مهم	modern	حديث / عصري

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

live around	يعيشون حول	at home	في المنزل
stop from	يمنع من	look like	يبدو كـ
provide for	يوفر من أجل	made of	مصنوع من
benefit from	يستفيد من	protected by	محمي بواسطة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past		PP
protect	يحمي	protected		protected
generate	يولد	generated		generated
benefit	يستفيد	benefited		benefited
block	يعيق / يحجب	blocked		blocked
describe	يصف	described		described
plan	يخطط	planned		planned
collect	يجمع	collected		collected
glue	يلصق / يربط بالغراء	glued		glued
provide	يوفر	provided		provided

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	PP
keep يحافظ على / يحتفظ بـ	kept	kept
grow ينمو	grew	grown
cut يقطع	cut	cut

Read and learn

A Visit to Aswan Dam

زيارة إلى سد أسوان



The Aswan Dam is a huge **structure** in southern Egypt **that** helps people every day. It was built by engineers **who** wanted to stop the Nile from flooding and to generate powerful energy for homes and factories. The dam, **which** is made of stone and concrete, also keeps water **that** farmers use to grow crops all year. It helps **protect** villages that are near the river and gives Egypt a clean **supply** of electricity. The people **who** live around the dam benefit from its energy and water. The Aswan Dam is one of the great modern buildings **that** changed Egypt's future.

سدّ أسوان هو هيكل ضخم في جنوب مصر والذي يساعد الناس كل يوم. قام ببنائه مهندسون أرادوا منع فيضان النيل وتوليد طاقة قوية للمنازل والمصانع. السد، الذي بُني من الحجر والخرسانة، يحتفظ أيضًا بالمياه التي يستخدمها الفلاحون لزراعة المحاصيل طوال العام. يساعد في حماية القرى القريبة من النهر ويوفر لمصر طاقة كهربائية نظيفة.

يستفيد الناس الذين يعيشون حول السد من طاقته ومياهه. يُعدّ سدّ أسوان واحدًا من المباني الحديثة العظيمة التي غيّرت مستقبل مصر.

Choose the correct answer

1. How does the dam help farmers?
 - a) It gives them free machines
 - b) It stops animals from eating crops
 - c) It keeps water for growing crops all year
 - d) It builds new fields automatically
2. What does the dam provide for homes and factories?
 - a) Clean water only
 - b) Electricity only
 - c) Both water and powerful energy
 - d) Food and electricity
3. People benefit from the dam when they
 - a) get water and energy from it
 - b) move away from it
 - c) block the river
 - d) stop farming



Tips for Writing an Invention Description

نصائح لكتابة وصف اختراع ما

- ① **Start with a problem:** Your invention needs to fix something that's difficult or annoying.
أبدأ بالمشكلة: يجب أن يصلح اختراعك شيئاً صعباً أو مزعجاً.
- ② **Describe your idea:** Tell us about your design and what your invention looks like.
صف فكرتك: أخبرنا عن تصميمك وكيف يبدو اختراعك.
- ③ **Explain how it helps:** Say what your invention does and how it will improve things.
اشرح كيف يساعد: قل ما يفعله اختراعك وكيف سيُحسن الأمور.
- ④ **Use key words:** Remember to use the vocabulary, like tool and design.
استخدم الكلمات المفتاحية: تذكر أن تستخدم المفردات، مثل كلمة "أداة" و"تصميم".

You are facing a poor internet connection at home. Think of a gadget you can invent to help solve the problem. Write a paragraph of about (70-60) words describing your idea. What it would look like, and how it would help

Handwriting practice area with dashed lines for writing.

Project

"Smart Pencil Holder"

SB

حامل أقلام ذكي



Goal: To help students keep their pencils, pens, and erasers organized on their desks.

الهدف: مساعدة الطلاب على تنظيم أقلامهم وأقلام الحبر والممحاة على مكاتبهم.

Steps

1 Plan your idea:

Draw a simple sketch of a pencil holder with separate sections for pens, pencils, and erasers.

خطط لفكرتك: ارسم مخططًا بسيطًا لحامل الأقلام مع أقسام منفصلة للأقلام الرصاص، وأقلام الحبر، والممحاة.

2 Collect your materials:

Use recycled boxes, cups, or small containers.

اجمع موادك: استخدم صناديق معاد تدويرها، أكوابًا، أو حاويات صغيرة.

3 Build your gadget:

Cut, tape, or glue the containers together to make your holder.

اصنع جهازك: قص أو ألصق بالشريط اللاصق الحاويات معًا لصنع الحامل الخاص بك.

4 Practice:

Explain how it keeps your desk tidy and helps you find your supplies easily.

التدرب: اشرح كيف يحافظ على ترتيب مكتبك ويساعدك في إيجاد أدواتك بسهولة.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The Aswan Dam helps energy for homes and factories.
a) block b) generate c) fix d) stop
2. Before building anything, it is important to make a clear
a) design b) flood c) river d) future
3. The dam keeps water for farmers to grow their
a) crops b) machines c) buildings d) ideas
4. The engineers built the dam to stop from destroying villages.
a) containers b) pencils c) teamwork d) floods
5. The dam is a huge in southern Egypt.
a) farm b) sketch c) structure d) container
6. Farmers use the stored water to crops all year.
a) grow b) cut c) stop d) tape
7. The dam was built to a clean supply of electricity.
a) stop b) provide c) describe d) collect

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

clean - concrete - protects - electricity - structure

The Aswan Dam is very important in Egypt. It is a modern ① that helps people in many ways. It is made of stone and ② The dam gives Egypt ③ energy. It also ④ villages near the Nile from floods and provides a supply of water for farmers.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

The Aswan Dam is one of Egypt's most important modern structures. It was built to stop the Nile from flooding and to provide clean electricity for homes, schools, and factories. The dam is made of strong stone and concrete, and it keeps a huge amount of water for farmers to use throughout the year. Many villages near the river are protected by the dam and benefit from its powerful energy. Visitors who come to see the dam learn how it changed Egypt's future by giving people safety, water, and a better life. It remains a great example of engineering and teamwork.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The Aswan Dam was built to stop
 a) teamwork b) factories c) floods d) machines
2. The dam helps farmers by keeping
 a) designs b) water c) stones d) internet

B Answer the following questions:

3. What materials is the Aswan Dam made of?

▶

4. How does the dam help villages near the river?

▶

5. Summarize the text in one sentence.

▶

4

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. make - did - holder - How - pencil - the - you?

2. made - concrete - of - is - and - stone - The - dam.

3. uncle - building - modern - a - designed - My.

4. the - protects - villages - river - near - dam - The.

5

Punctuate the following:

1. The aswan Dam is a huge structure in egypt.

2. engineers used concrete and stone to build the dam

6

Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"A Visit to Aswan Dam"



► **structure - electricity**

Review on Unit 2

Main Vocabulary

invention	اختراع	Ancient Egyptians	المصريون القدماء
gadgets	دوات صغيرة	furniture	أثاث
blueprint	مخطط / تصميم	clothes	ملابس
tools	أدوات	structure	هيكل / بنية
assemble	يركب / يجمع	supply	يزود / يمدّ
improve	يُحسّن / يُطوّر	electricity	كهرباء
solar power	الطاقة الشمسية	dam	سدّ
robot	روبوت	measure	يقيس / قياس
plan	خطة	workshop	ورشة
wheels	عجلات	gear	ترس / عجلة تروس
engineer	مهندس	pendulum	بندول / ثقل معلق
fabric	قماش	design	تصميم / يصمم
linen	كتان	accurate	دقيق
wooden	خشبي	inventors	مخترعون
loom	نول	machine	آلة

Language In Use



Relative Pronouns

أدوات الوصل

Relative pronouns are words that join two sentences together.

أدوات الوصل هي كلمات تستخدم لربط جملتين معًا.

1 Who

used for people

Example:

The engineer **who** designed the robot is smart.

الذي / التي / اللذين

تُستخدم للأشخاص

2 Whose

used to show possession

Example:

The student **whose** invention won was happy.

تُستخدم للتعبير عن الملكية

3 Which

Example:

The solar robot, **which** has wheels, is a cool gadget.

الذي / التي / اللذين

That

used for things and people

Example:

The gadget **that** I bought broke.

الذي / التي / اللذين

تُستخدم للأشياء والأشخاص

Unit 2

Pronunciation

Prefixes

- When you say **re-**, make it sound like “**ree**” before a strong syllable (like in **rebuild**), but like “**ri**” before weak ones (like **return**).

عندما تقول **re-**، اجعلها تبدو مثل “**ree**” قبل المقاطع القوية (مثل rebuild)، ولكن مثل “**ri**” قبل المقاطع الضعيفة (مثل return).

Explanation

توضيح:

- A **strong syllable** is a part of the word that is stressed or louder.
المقطع القوي هو الجزء من الكلمة الذي يُنطق بقوة أو يُشدد عليه.
- A **weak syllable** is less stressed, quieter or softer.
المقطع الضعيف هو الجزء من الكلمة الذي يُنطق أقل قوة أو بصوت أضعف.
- The stress usually stays on the **main word**, not on the prefix.
عادةً ما يظل التركيز الصوتي على الكلمة الرئيسية وليس على البادئة.

Dictation:

jewelry	طاقة / قوة
buildings	حاوية / علبة
steps	لوازم / مستلزمات
teamwork	موهوب
stone	محاصيل
model	مفيد
shape	سجادة طائرة
explanation	قطع
painting kit	معاد تدويره
huge	ودود / لطيف
electricity	مهم
sketch	جهاز
possible	إبداع
method	نظيف
Interviewer	عرض / برنامج
tidy	فكرة
telescope	رائع / لامع
worker	مهارات
accurately	طاقة الرياح
exciting	حديث / عصري

Writing Skills

My Brilliant Invention

I created a brilliant invention called the Smart Pencil Holder. This gadget helps students keep their pencils, pens, and erasers organized on their desks. It has separate sections for each item and a small drawer for other supplies. My invention makes studying easier and keeps the desk tidy. Everyone who uses this gadget loves it!

The Egyptian Loom

Long ago, the Egyptians used a loom to make clothes and blankets. The workers assembled the loom carefully, connecting all the wooden parts so it could work well. This invention was very important for daily life, as it helped make strong fabric. Today, looms are still important for producing textiles all over the world.

The Clockmaker's Invention

Hundreds of years ago, a clockmaker built a special clock with a pendulum that moved from side to side. He worked for months in his workshop to make it perfect. The clock kept time accurately and had a new and exciting design. His invention became famous and helped people measure time more easily.

A Visit to Aswan Dam

The Aswan Dam is a huge structure in southern Egypt. It stores water that farmers use to grow crops all year. The dam also produces electricity, which powers many homes and factories. Visiting the dam helps people understand how it works and why it is important for both farming and generating electricity in Egypt.

The Clockmaker's Invention

The clockmaker worked carefully in his workshop. He built a clock with a long pendulum that moved slowly from side to side. The engineer wanted the clock to be very accurate. He measured every part carefully and assembled it correctly. At last, the clock was ready and worked perfectly.

Building the Aswan Dam

Aswan Dam is a huge structure in southern Egypt. It helps control the river's water and prevents floods in nearby villages. The dam also produces electricity for homes, schools, and factories. People admire the engineers who built it. This structure is very important because it provides power, protects the land, and supports farming all year round.



Test 3 on Unit 2

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

Total

60

1

Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

(10Ms)

time - better - accurate - class - design - pendulum

Ali : What are you making in your workshop today?

Omar : I'm designing a new clock with a long ① .

Ali : Wow! Will it keep ② time?

Omar : Yes, because the pendulum helps measure ③ carefully.

Ali : Did inventors long ago use gears too?

Omar : Yes, gears helped their clocks work ④ .

Ali : Your ⑤ sounds amazing!

2

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

(10Ms)

1. The man (which) is teaching us English is very kind.

2. This is the book (whose) I was looking for.

3. The boy (who) bike is red is my brother.

4. The students (which) study hard always get good marks.

5. I visited the museum (whose) shows old Egyptian tools.

3

Choose the correct answer:

(10Ms)

1. The engineer drew a (clothes - fabric - blueprint) to show the design of the new machine.

2. A (chair - pendulum - car) is usually part of a clock.

3. The Ancient Egyptians used a (loom - robot - gear) to make strong linen fabric.
4. A smart (engineer - fabric - furniture) can design machines with many gears and wheels.
5. A (library - dam - store) helps people by storing water.
6. The engineer (who - which - whose) built the robot is very clever.
7. I met a student (that - who - whose) invention won the competition.
8. The book (who - which - whose) has colorful pictures is fun to read.
9. The teacher (who - whose - which) teaches English is very kind.
10. The gadget (that - whose - who) I bought yesterday broke.

4 Read and circle the odd one out, and replace it with a correct one: (10Ms)

1. invention - robot - improve - solar power
2. talented - play - difficult - clever
3. machine - engineer - wheels - gadget
4. fabric - linen - loom - robot
5. product - device - instrument - young

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10Ms)

Long ago, the Ancient Egyptians used a loom to make strong fabric. They carefully wove threads of linen together to create clothes and blankets. The loom was made of wooden parts, and the workers had to assemble it carefully. Every piece of linen was measured and placed correctly so the threads would make strong and beautiful fabric. This wooden loom helped them produce fabric that lasted for many years.

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. The Ancient Egyptians used a loom to make fabric. (.....)
2. The threads were made of cotton. (.....)
3. The wooden loom helped produce fabric that lasted many years. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

4. The workers carefully wove (paper - stones - threads) of linen together.
5. Every piece of linen was (measured - eaten - thrown) and placed correctly.

6 Write a paragraph of (5) sentences using the following guiding elements: (10Ms)

"The Clockmaker's Invention"



► pendulum - clock - workshop - engineer - accurate

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 4 on Unit 2

Total

30

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:



(2Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1. Ali designed a robot to help people at home. (.....)
2. He did not plan the robot and started building it immediately. (.....)
3. The robot worked using solar power. (.....)
4. Ali wanted to improve the robot every day. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (2Ms)

1. My new helps students organize their school gadgets.
a) linen b) dam c) invention d) water
2. Workers used their to assemble the wooden structure.
a) tools b) linen c) wheels d) farm
3. The student sits next to me is very friendly.
a) which b) who c) whose d) where
4. I have a gadget can measure temperature.
a) whom b) whose c) who d) that

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

Engineers - wooden - clothes - drew - skills

Thousands of years ago, the ancient Egyptians invented the loom. It helped them make ①, blankets, and beautiful fabrics from linen. ② and skilled workers drew a blueprint before building it. They carefully assembled the ③ pieces so the loom could work well. People used the loom to make colorful cloth and show their ④

Term 2

4

Read the text and answer the questions:

(7Ms)

Long ago, clever inventors created amazing machines. One famous invention was a clock with a pendulum that moved slowly from side to side. The engineer drew a careful design before building it. He used gears to help the clock work smoothly. Every part had to be accurate so the clock could tell the correct time. People admired the inventors for their clever ideas. This invention showed how careful planning and skill can create something very useful.



Choose the correct answer:

1. The part of the clock that moved slowly from side to side was the
 a) Gear b) Pendulum c) Design d) Machine
2. Every part of the clock had to be accurate
 a) To make it look nice b) To tell the correct time
 c) To build faster d) To use less energy



Answer the following questions:

3. Who created the clock with a pendulum?

4. What did the engineer do before building the clock?

5. How did the inventors' careful planning and skill help people?

5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:
(4Ms)

1. The teacher (which) teaches English is very kind.
2. The clock (who) has a pendulum is very old.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2Ms)

1. gears - help - the - clock - work - smoothly - Did?

.....

2. machines - Modern - inspired - are - by - ancient - inventions.

.....

7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. The ancient Egyptians used a loom to make fabric

.....

2. ali designed a robot that can help people at home

.....

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below: (7Ms)

"Building the Aswan Dam"

▶ electricity - structure

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Hidden Gems of Egypt

الكثوز الخفية في مصر

Unit 3

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit, students will be able to:

Listening

- Use common vocabulary related to ancient sites, history, and heritage.
- Ask and answer questions about Egyptian monuments, tombs, and temples in short discussions.
- Express opinions and feelings about visiting historical places using simple sentences.
- Use new vocabulary to describe places, discoveries, and archaeological findings orally.

Speaking

- Show understanding of short talks and conversations about Egyptian landmarks and history.
- Recognize key vocabulary related to archaeology, temples, and monuments in listening tasks.
- Identify the main idea and specific details in spoken texts about hidden Egyptian sites.
- Follow short oral instructions related to visiting or describing historical places.

Reading

- Recognize and understand vocabulary related to archaeology, temples, tombs, and fossils.
- Answer comprehension questions about informational texts describing ancient Egyptian sites.
- Identify main ideas and supporting details in short reading passages.
- Make simple inferences about the importance and preservation of Egyptian heritage.

Writing

- Write short, correct sentences using vocabulary about Egypt's hidden treasures.
- Write short paragraphs or blog entries describing a historical place, visit, or discovery.
- Use the present perfect tense correctly to describe past events with present results.

Lesson 1

The Enchanting Tuna el-Gebel

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



burial

دفن



mummy

مومياء



chamber

غرفة



carving

نقش - حفر



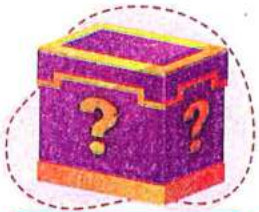
archaeologist

عالم آثار



discovery

اكتشاف



mystery

غموض - لغز



tomb

مقبرة - قبر

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

museum

متحف

desert

صحراء

corridor

ممر

researcher

باحث

heritage

تراث

mountain

جبل

priest

كاهن

site

موقع

art

فن

area

منطقة

scene

مشهد - منظر

research

بحث - يبحث

style

نمط

secrets

سر

Unit 3

Adjectives

صفات

ancient	قديم جداً - أثري	mysterious	غامض
enchating	ساحر - جذاب	famous	مشهور
exciting	مثير	underground	تحت الأرض
colorful	ملهيء بالألوان	unforgettable	لا يُنسى
quiet	هادئ	Greek	يوناني
proud	فخور	artistic	ذو طابع فني
preserved	محفوظ	excited	متحمّس
Egyptian	مصري	important	مهمّ
wonderful	رائع	special	خاص - مميز
bored	شعر بالملل	mummified	مُحَنّط

Expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

for years	منذ سنوات	in the desert	في الصحراء
filled with	ملهيء بـ	covered with	مغطى بـ
in the middle of	في وسط	feel proud of	يشعر بالفخر بـ
walk through	يمشي عبر	famous for	مشهور بـ
travel back in time	يسافر عبر الزمن	learn about	يتعلّم عن

Definitions تعريفات

archaeologist	is a person who studies ancient places and old objects
mummy	is a body that has been preserved for thousands of years
chamber	is a special room inside a tomb
Tuna el-Gebel	is a mysterious site filled with history and secrets

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
amaze	يُدْهش	amazed	amazed
research	يبحث - يجري بحثًا	researched	researched
discover	يكتشف	discovered	discovered
include	يشمل	included	included
preserve	يحفظ - يُمون	preserved	preserved
cover	يغطي	covered	covered
create	يخلق - يصنع	created	created
continue	يستمر	continued	continued
fascinate	يُسر - يجذب	fascinated	fascinated
travel	يسافر	traveled	traveled

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
lie	يقع - يوجد	lay	lain
stand	يقف	stood	stood
show	يُظهر	showed	shown
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
make	يصنع	made	made
see	يرى	saw	seen

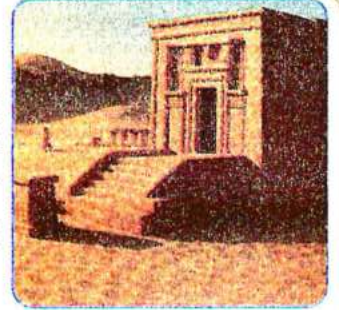


Read and learn



Tuna el-Gebel

تونة الجبل



In the desert near Minya lies Tuna el-Gebel, a mysterious **burial** site that has amazed **archaeologists** for years. The area is famous for its underground **chambers** and long corridors filled with ancient art.

Researchers made many exciting **discoveries**, including hundreds of **mummies** of animals, especially preserved birds. في الصحراء بالقرب من المنيا تقع تونة الجبل، وهو موقع دفن غامض أدهش علماء الآثار لسنوات عديدة. تشتهر المنطقة بغرفها تحت الأرض وممراتها الطويلة المليئة بالفنون القديمة. وقد أجرى الباحثون العديد من الاكتشافات المثيرة، بما في ذلك مئات المومياوات للحيوانات، وخاصة الطيور المَحْتَطَّة.

In the middle of the site stands the tomb of Petosiris, a high priest who lived more than two thousand years ago. His tomb walls are covered with beautiful carvings and colorful scenes that show both Egyptian and Greek styles. The **mystery** of how ancient Egyptians created such wonderful tombs and preserved animals continues to fascinate visitors. في وسط الموقع يقع قبر بتوسيريس، وهو كاهن عظيم عاش قبل أكثر من ألفي عام. جدران قبره مغطاة بنقوش جميلة ومشاهد ملوّنة تُظهر كلا من الأسلوبين المصري واليوناني. ويستمر لغز كيفية تمكّن المصريين القدماء من إنشاء مثل هذه القبور الرائعة وتحنيط الحيوانات في إبهار الزّوار.

Walking through Tuna el-Gebel, people feel like they have traveled back in time. The quiet desert, the carvings, and the smell of history make the place unforgettable. Seeing these ancient **burial chambers** and **mummies** helps every Egyptian feel proud of their country's rich heritage.

أثناء التجوّل في تونة الجبل، يشعر الناس وكأنهم قد سافروا عبر الزمن إلى الماضي. إن الصحراء الهادئة، والنقوش، ورائحة التاريخ تجعل المكان لا يُنسى. إن رؤية هذه الغرف الجنائزية القديمة والمومياوات تجعل كل مصري يشعر بالفخر بتراث بلاده الغني.



Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Tuna el-Gebel is a famous burial site located near Minya. (.....)
2. Archaeologists discovered hundreds of mummified animals at the site. (.....)
3. The tomb of Petosiris shows only Egyptian artistic styles. (.....)
4. The chambers and carvings at Tuna el-Gebel are still mysterious to researchers. (.....)
5. Visiting Tuna el-Gebel can help Egyptians feel proud of their heritage. (.....)

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Choose the correct answer:

1. A/An studies ancient places and old objects.
 a) artist b) archaeologist c) visitor d) teacher
2. A/An is a body that has been preserved for thousands of years.
 a) priest b) animal c) bird d) mummy
3. A is a special room inside a tomb.
 a) corridor b) museum c) chamber d) site
4. A new of ancient tombs made scientists very excited.
 a) house b) discovery c) school d) wall
5. Tuna el-Gebel is a site filled with history and secrets.
 a) mysterious b) tired c) boring d) noisy
6. Visitors feel when they see the ancient tombs and mummies.
 a) bored b) excited c) tired d) angry
7. The carvings on the walls are very and colorful.
 a) artistic b) tired c) preserved d) bored
8. Researchers found many animals, especially birds.
 a) living b) wild c) mummified d) friendly

9. Walking through Tuna el-Gebel makes people feel of their country's heritage.

- a) tired b) proud c) bored d) quiet

10. The made many discoveries in the tombs.

- a) archaeologist b) artist c) teacher d) farmer

2 Read and complete using the words in the box:

mysterious - heritage - carvings - mummies - chambers

Tuna el-Gebel is an ancient site near Minya. It is famous for its long corridors and underground ① filled with old art. Archaeologists found many ② of animals, especially birds. In the middle of the site, there is a beautiful tomb with colorful ③ People visit this mysterious place to learn about Egypt's rich ④

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Last Thursday, our class went on a school trip to Tuna el-Gebel near Minya. It was an exciting day! We learned about ancient tombs and saw many mummified animals, especially birds. Our guide told us stories about the high priest Petosiris and showed us his tomb with colorful carvings and long corridors. We took photos, drew pictures, and talked about Egypt's great history. Everyone felt amazed and proud of our country's wonderful heritage.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The students saw mummified at Tuna el-Gebel.

- a) trees b) animals c) statues d) flowers

2. The tomb of Petosiris is known for its carvings.

- a) dark b) colorful c) small d) broken

B Answer the following questions:

3. When did the class visit Tuna el-Gebel?

4. What did the guide tell the students about?

5. Summarize the text in two sentences.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make a complete sentence:

1. site - burial - mysterious - a - is - Tuna el-Gebel.

▶

2. underground - famous - its - is - chambers - for - It.

▶

3. proud - Egyptians - their - of - heritage - feel.

▶

4. before - visit - you - Did - tomb - an - ancient?

▶ ?

5. mummified - discovered - Archaeologists - animals - the site - at.

▶

5 Punctuate the following:

1. what can visitors see at Tuna el-gebel?

▶

2. an archaeologist studies ancient places

▶

3. archaeologists discovered hundreds of mummified animals

▶

6 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"Tuna el-Gebel"

▶ ancient site - archaeologists

.....

.....

.....

.....

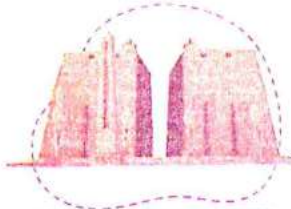
Lesson 2

The Temple of Dakka



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



temple

معبد



monument

أثر - نصب تذكاري



restore

يُرمَّم - يستعيد



expert

خبير



ruler

حاكم



border

حدّ - حدود



treasures

كنوز



ancient gods

الآلهة القديمة

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

quietly

بهدوء

symbol

رمز

wisdom

الحكمة

cultures

ثقافات

emperor

إمبراطور

the River Nile

نهر النيل

traditions

تقاليد

water level

منسوب المياه

the High Dam

السد العالي

gate

بوابة

carefully

بحرص - بعناية

sunlight

ضوء الشمس

stone

حجر

feeling

إحساس

king

ملك

history

تاريخ

softly

بلطف

Adjectives

صفات

busy	مزدحم	southern	جنوبي
amazing	مذهل	peaceful	هادئ - سلمي
magical	سحري	modern	حديث
Roman	روماني	different	مختلف

Expressions and prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

far from	بعيدًا عن	for thousands of years	لآلاف السنين
in Nubia	في النوبة	near Egypt	بالقرب من مصر
over time	مع مرور الوقت	close to	بالقرب من
tell stories	يروى قصصًا	feel proud	يشعر بالفخر
around the temple	حول المعبد	protect from	يحمي من

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
design	يصمّم	designed	designed
respect	يحترم	respected	respected
raise	يرفع	raised	raised
restore	يرمّم - يستعيد	restored	restored
move	ينقل	moved	moved
watch	يشاهد	watched	watched
protect	يحمي	protected	protected
expand	يوسّع	expanded	expanded
decorate	يزيّن	decorated	decorated
develop	يطوّر	developed	developed

Present		Past	pp
become	يصبح	became	become
tell	يحكي - يروي	told	told
build	يبني	built	built
find	يجد	found	found
know	يعرف	knew	known



Listen and repeat



The Temple of Dakka معبد الدكة

Far from Egypt's busy cities, the **Temple of Dakka** has stood quietly for thousands of years in Nubia, near Egypt's southern **border**. This ancient **monument** has become a symbol of Egypt's long and proud history.



Many **rulers** have designed temples for ancient gods like Thoth, the god of wisdom.

بعيدًا عن مدن مصر المزدحمة، وقف معبد الدكة يهدوء لأكثر من آلاف السنين في النوبة، بالقرب من الحدود الجنوبية لمصر. لقد أصبح هذا الأثر القديم رمزًا لتاريخ مصر العريق والملئ بالفخر. وقد شيد العديد من الحكام معابد للآلهة القدماء مثل الإله تحوت، إله الحكمة.

Over time, Greek and Roman emperors **have added** new walls and carvings, showing how different cultures **have respected** Egypt's traditions. The temple once stood close to the River Nile, but when the High Dam raised the water level, Egyptian experts **have worked** carefully to **restore** it and move every stone to higher ground.

مع مرور الوقت، أضاف الأباطرة اليونانيون والرومانيون جدرانًا ونقوشًا جديدة، مما يُظهر كيف احترمت الثقافات المختلفة تقاليد مصر. كان المعبد في السابق قائمًا بالقرب من نهر النيل، ولكن عندما رفع السد العالي منسوب المياه، عمل الخبراء المصريون بعناية على ترميمه ونقل كل حجر إلى أرض أعلى.

Today, visitors **walk** through its tall gates and **watch the amazing** carvings that tell stories of ancient gods and kings. The sunlight shines softly on its walls, and the quiet desert around the temple **creates** a peaceful, magical feeling. Everyone who **has visited** Dakka feels proud of how Egypt **has protected** its history and treasures.

اليوم، يسير الزوّار عبر بواباته العالية ويشاهدون النقوش المذهلة التي تروي قصص الآلهة والملوك القدماء. يتسلل ضوء الشمس برقة على جدرانها، وتُضفي الصحراء الهادئة المحيطة بالمعبد إحساسًا بالسلام والسحر. ويشعر كل من زار معبد الدكة بالفخر لما قامت به مصر من حماية تاريخها وكنوزها.

Choose the correct answer:



Student's
Book

- What has made the Temple of Dakka an important monument?
 - Its modern design
 - Its long history and carvings
 - Its location in a city
 - Its use as a museum
- Who has helped expand and decorate the temple?
 - Greek and Roman emperors
 - Modern tourists
 - Nubian farmers
 - Egyptian soldiers
- What has protected the temple from the rising Nile waters?
 - Building new walls
 - Experts moving it to higher ground
 - Covering it with sand
 - Building houses around it



Language in Use:



Present Perfect Tense

زمن المضارع التام

- When we use the present perfect, there is a connection with now.

عندما نستخدم المضارع التام، يكون هناك علاقة بالحاضر.

Unit 3



Study this example situation:

Example:

▶ Ow! I **have** cut my finger.



○ **Action:** Cutting my finger (in the past).

الحدث: جرح إصبعي (في الماضي).

○ **Connection with now:** My finger is bleeding and still hurts.

العلاقة بالحاضر: إصبعي ينزف وما زال يؤلمني.



Study this example situation:

Example:

▶ I **have eaten** the cake.



○ **Action:** Eating the cake (in the past).

الحدث: أكل الكعكة (في الماضي).

○ **Connection with now:** No cake is left for anyone else.

العلاقة بالحاضر: لا توجد كعكة متبقية لأي شخص آخر.



Study this example situation:

Example:

▶ I **have worked** for this school for 10 years.



○ **Action:** Working for this school (in the past).

الحدث: العمل في هذه المدرسة (في الماضي).

○ **Connection with now:** Still working now.

العلاقة بالحاضر: ما زلت أعمل فيها حتى الآن.

The present perfect is **have/has** + past participle (p.p.).

Affirmative Sentences الجمل المثبتة

I - We - They - You **have** + p.p.

He - She - It **has** + p.p.

Examples:

- ▶ I **have finished** my homework.
- ▶ She **has finished** her homework.

Negative Sentences الجمل المنفية

(not) (لم)

- For negative, use "**not**" after **have/has**.

للسفي، استخدم "not" بعد **have/has**.

I - We - They - You **have not** + p.p.

He - She - It **has not** + p.p.

Examples:

- ▶ I **have not finished** my homework.
- ▶ She **has not finished** her homework.

Questions تكوين الأسئلة

(Have - Has) (هل)

- For questions, use **Have/Has** + subject + the p.p.

للأسئلة، استخدم **Have/Has** + الفاعل + التصريف الثالث للفعل.

Have I - we - they - you + p.p?

Has he - she - it + p.p?

Examples:

- ▶ Have you **finished** your homework?
 ▶ Has she **finished** her homework?

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- She in this school for ten years.
 a) work b) has worked c) working d) works
- They in Paris since 2018.
 a) lived b) have lived c) are living d) live.
- I the same phone for three years.
 a) have had b) had c) am having d) have
- He English since he was a child.
 a) studied b) studies c) has studied d) is studying
- My brother that video game for hours.
 a) have played b) has played c) is playing d) plays
- Have you breakfast this morning?
 a) eat b) eaten c) eat d) eats
- He his ankle, and now he can't walk properly.
 a) injures b) have injured c) has injured d) is injuring
- I the dishes, so the kitchen is clean now.
 a) has washed b) wash c) have washed d) washing
- Someone has the window. It's open now.
 a) opened b) opens c) has opened d) is opening
- Have you ever to Paris?
 a) go b) gone c) went d) goes

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets

- Sara already (**finish**) her project.
- They (**not/visit**) the museum this month.
- (**Did**) you ever been to Aswan?
- My brother (**not / clean**) his room yet.
- The students just (**complete**) the assignment.

6. What (do) you (learn) so far?
 7. The children (watch) that movie before.
 8. We (not/see) the new teacher yet.

Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Choose the correct answer:

- Many have designed temples for ancient gods like Thoth.
 a) students b) rulers c) travelers d) writers
- Over time, Greek and Roman added new walls and carvings.
 a) farmers b) artists c) emperors d) teachers
- When the High Dam raised the, experts worked carefully to move the temple.
 a) sand b) temperature c) wind speed d) water level
- Egyptian experts worked to restore the temple.
 a) carefully b) slowly c) carelessly d) noisily
- The sunlight softly on the temple walls.
 a) visits b) walks c) plays d) shines
- The word "monument" means
 a) a festival b) a kind of animal
 c) a story book d) an old building or statue
- Many tourists the temple this year.
 a) visit b) visits c) visiting d) have visited
- Visitors the beautiful carvings on the walls.
 a) didn't see b) have seen c) don't see d) seeing
- Greek and Roman emperors their culture to Egypt's traditions.
 a) bring b) has brought c) bringing d) have brought
- The experts finished restoring the temple.
 a) didn't b) have c) don't d) not
- visitors liked the magical feeling around the temple?
 a) Have b) Did c) Does d) Do

2 Choose the correct form:

1. The experts (**have moved** - **moved**) the temple to higher ground.
2. Tourists (**haven't visited** - **don't visit**) the Temple of Dakka often.
3. (**Have** - **Did**) the experts restored the temple carefully?
4. The temple (**has stood** - **stood**) in Nubia for hundreds of years.
5. (**Has** - **Did**) the team finished their work successfully?

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Hello, everyone! My name is Omar, and I'll be your tour guide today. Welcome to the great Temple of Dakka, one of Egypt's ancient treasures. This beautiful temple was built thousands of years ago in Nubia for Thoth, the god of wisdom. Later, Greek and Roman rulers added their own carvings and walls. When the High Dam was built, experts moved the temple to protect it from the water. Look around! Its tall gates and carvings show Egypt's proud and amazing history.

4 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The Temple of Dakka was built for
 a) the god of the sun b) the god of wisdom
 c) the god of the moon d) the god of love
2. Egyptian experts moved the temple to keep it safe from
 a) sandstorms b) tourists c) rising water d) animals

5 Answer the following questions:

3. Who is speaking to the tourists in the text?

4. Where is the Temple of Dakka located?

5. What did Greek and Roman rulers add to the temple?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make a complete sentence:

1. sunlight - The - softly - shines - its - on - walls.

2. visit - You - can - the - Nubia - in - Temple of Dakka.

3. the temple - Who - helped - has - expand - and - decorate?

4. the - Temple of - Dakka - How long - stood - has?

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. Many tourists haven't (visit) Dakka.

2. Experts (has) restored the temple.

3. Visitors (not see) all the carvings yet.

4. They (take) many photos of the temple today.

5. The sun (shine) brightly on the temple walls.

6 Punctuate the following:

1. greek and roman emperors added new walls.

2. The temple once stood close to the river Nile.

3. the desert around the temple is quiet

4. How do you feel about Egypt's history

7 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"The Temple of Dakka"

► Nubia - monument - rulers



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



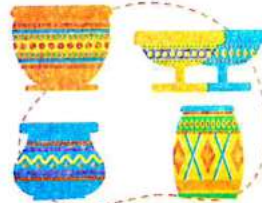
tour guide

مرشد سياحي



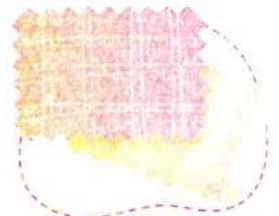
design

يصمم - تصميم



pattern

نمط - زخرفة



fabric

قماش



craftsman

حرفي



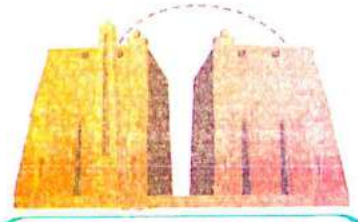
discover

يكتشف



pottery

فخار



the Valley of the Kings

وادي الملوك

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

skillfully

ببراعة

drawings

رسومات

royal

ملكي

kind

نوع

worker

عامل

team

فريق

artist

فنان

paper

ورق

archaeologist

عالم آثار

wood

خشب

notes

ملاحظات

engineer

مهندس

Adjectives

صفات

skilled

ماهر

lost

مفقود

wonderful

رائع

unknown

غير معروف

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

pieces of pottery	قطع من الفخار	once	ذات مرة
Exactly!	بالضبط!	That sounds like	هذا يبدو مثل ...
decorate with	يزين بـ	in ancient Egypt	في مصر القديمة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
carve	ينقش	carved	carved
discover	يكشف	discovered	discovered
notice	يلاحظ	noticed	noticed
reach	يصل	reached	reached
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	imagined

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
hear	يسمع	heard	heard
understand	يفهم	understood	understood
think	يعتقد	thought	thought

Read and learn

Tuna el-Gebel

تونة الجبل



Tour Guide: Welcome to Deir el-Medina, the ancient village where the craftsmen who built the royal tombs once lived. Have you ever heard about this place before?

المرشد السياحي: أهلاً بكم في دير المدينة، القرية القديمة حيث عاش الحرفيون الذين بنوا المقابر الملكية. هل سمعتم من قبل عن هذا المكان؟

Tourist : No, I haven't. Who lived here?

السائح: لا، لم أسمع. من كان يعيش هنا؟

Tour Guide : Skilled workers and artists have lived here with their families. They have painted and carved the tombs of the kings in the Valley of the Kings.

المرشد السياحي: عاش هنا عمال وفنانون ماهرون مع عائلاتهم. لقد رسموا ونقشوا مقابر الملوك في وادي الملوك.

Tourist : Have archaeologists discovered anything interesting in their houses?

السائح: هل اكتشف علماء الآثار أي شيء ممتع في منازلهم؟

Tour Guide : Yes, they have. They've discovered drawings and notes on pieces of pottery.

المرشد السياحي: نعم، لقد اكتشفوا. لقد عثروا على رسومات وملاحظات على قطع من الفخار.

Tourist : That sounds like the first kind of notebook!

السائح: هذا يبدو مثل أول نوع من الدفاتر!

Tour Guide : Exactly! Have you noticed the patterns on the walls? They show how the workers decorated their homes.

المرشد السياحي: بالضبط! هل لاحظت النقوش على الجدران؟ إنها تظهر كيف زين العمال منازلهم.

Tourist : It's wonderful to see how artists lived thousands of years ago.

السائح: إنه لأمر رائع أن نرى كيف عاش الفنانون منذ آلاف السنين.

Tour Guide : Many visitors have said the same. Deir el-Medina helps us understand daily life in ancient Egypt.

المرشد السياحي: قال العديد من الزوار نفس الشيء. يساعدنا دير المدينة على فهم الحياة اليومية في مصر القديمة.



Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. Deir el-Medina was a village for the craftsmen who built tombs. (.....)
2. The workers lived far from their families. (.....)
3. Archaeologists have found drawings on pieces of pottery. (.....)
4. The workers decorated their homes with wall patterns. (.....)
5. Many visitors have said that Deir el-Medina shows daily life in ancient Egypt. (.....)

Suffixes

A suffix is a letter or group of letters added to the end of a word to change its meaning or grammatical function.

اللاحقة هي حرف أو مجموعة أحرف تُضاف إلى نهاية الكلمة لتغيير معناها أو وظيفتها النحوية.

The suffix -ify means "to make" or "to cause to become."

اللاحقة -ify تعني "يجعل" أو "يتسبب في أن يصبح".

We add -ify to nouns or adjectives to form verbs.

نضيف اللاحقة -ify إلى الأسماء أو الصفات لتكوين أفعال.

Examples:

▶ beauty جمال beautify يجعل شيئاً جميلاً

▶ active نشط activate ينشط شيئاً

The suffix -er means someone who performs an action.

اللاحقة -er تعني شخصاً يقوم بفعل معين.

We add -er to verbs to form nouns.

نضيف اللاحقة -er إلى الأفعال لتكوين أسماء.

Examples:

▶ paint يرسم painter رسام

▶ write يكتب writer كاتب

Unit 3

Base Word		-ify		Meaning
simple	بسيط	simplify	يُبَسِّط	to make something simple يجعل شيئًا بسيطًا
pure	نقي	purify	يُنَقِّي	to make clean or pure يجعل الشيء نقيًا أو نظيفًا
clear	واضح	clarify	يُوضِّح	to make something clear يجعل شيئًا واضحًا

Base Word		-er		Meaning
drive	يقود - يسوق	driver	سائق	someone who drives شخص يقود
bake	يخبز	baker	خباز	someone who bakes شخص يخبز
teach	يُعَلِّم	teacher	مُعَلِّم	someone who teaches شخص يُعَلِّم

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Choose the correct answer:

- Skilled lived in Deir el-Medina with their families.
a) kings b) craftsmen c) tourists d) guides
- A person who teaches students is called a
a) teach b) teaching c) teacher d) teaches
- We add "-er" to verbs to form
a) adjectives b) nouns c) verbs d) adverbs
- Tourists can see beautiful on the walls showing how workers decorated their homes.
a) patterns b) books c) fabrics d) papers
- The village of Deir el-Medina helps us understand in ancient Egypt.
a) royal tombs b) daily life
c) animal mummies d) the Nile

6. A person who shows visitors around historical places is a
 a) tourist b) traveler c) tour guide d) artist
7. The craftsmen worked to build the royal tombs.
 a) slowly b) carelessly c) skillfully d) loudly
8. A person who designs buildings is a/an
 a) engineer b) archaeologist c) craftsman d) baker
9. The families of the workers lived in small
 a) museums b) villages c) cities d) shops
10. The workers used wood, pottery, and fabric to their homes.
 a) keep b) reach c) decorate d) think

2 Read and complete using the words in the box:

pottery - royal - families - drawings - decorated

In ancient Egypt, skilled workers lived in Deir el-Medina. They built the ① tombs for the kings and ② them with beautiful patterns. Archaeologists have discovered ③ and notes on pieces of pottery. These discoveries help us understand how artists and their ④ lived thousands of years ago.

3 Use the correct form of the word in brackets:

1. Engineers work to (pure) the water before it reaches our homes.
2. The teacher helped (clear) the new rule for the students.
3. A (teach) helps students learn.
4. Modern machines (simple) work and save time.
5. A (bake) makes fresh bread and cakes.

4 Put the words in the correct order to make a complete sentence:

1. have - What - discovered - their - in - archaeologists - homes?
 ▶ ?
2. Deir el-Medina - The - tombs - built - royal - workers - in.
 ▶
3. the walls - on - the patterns - noticed - Have - you?
 ▶ ?
4. cakes - and - bread - fresh - makes - A baker.
 ▶
5. made - a new - The artist - design for - the - temple doors.
 ▶

5 Punctuate the following:

1. Welcome to deir el-Medina, the ancient village
 ▶
2. how does a teacher help students learn
 ▶

6 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"Deir el-Medina"

▶ village - royal tombs - craftsmen

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lessons 4-5

The Valley of the Whales
(Wadi El-Hitan)



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



trail

مسار - طريق



Wadi El-Hitan - the Valley of the Whales

وادي الحيتان



symbol

رمز



skeleton

هيكل عظمي



fossil

حفريّة

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

scientist	عالم	student explorer	طالب مستكشف
Egypt's desert	صحراء مصر	details	تفاصيل
the Western Desert	الصحراء الغربية	creatures	مخلوقات
ocean	محيط	travel brochure	كُتَيْب سفر - نشرة سياحية
bones	عظام	slogan	شعار
and animals	حيوانات برية	experience	تجربة
importance	أهمية	title	عنوان

Unit 3

Adjectives

صفات

deep	عميق	magical	ساحر - خيالي
incredible	لا يُصدّق - رائع جدًا	magnificent	عظيم - رائع الجمال
remarkable	ملحوظ - رائع	historical	تاريخي
scientific	علمي	special	خاص - مميز

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

Millions of years ago	منذ ملايين السنين	covered by	مُغطى بـ
a world heritage site	موقع تراث عالمي	because of	بسبب
walk along	يسير على طول	known as	يُعرف باسم
future generations	أجيال المستقبل	exactly	بالضبط

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
post	ينشر - يرسل	posted	posted
cover	يغطي	covered	covered
change	يغيّر	changed	changed
ensure	يضمن	ensured	ensured
remain	يبقى	remained	remained
remind	يذكّر	reminded	reminded
appreciate	يُقدّر	appreciated	appreciated

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
swim	يسبح	swam	swum
know	يعرف	knew	known
become	يصبح	became	become
lie	يستلقي	lay	lain
find	يجد	found	found
feel	يشعر	felt	felt
bring	يُحضِر	brought	brought



Read and Learn



Wadi El-Hitan: Egypt's Valley of the Whales

BLOG HOME ABOUT ME LINKS ARCHIVE



Posted on March 15, 2025

By Salma, Student Explorer

نُشر في 15 مارس 2025

بواسطة سلمى، طالبة مستكشفة

Deep in the Western Desert, there is a magical place called **Wadi El-Hitan**, or the **Valley of the Whales**. Millions of years ago, this area was covered by a very big ocean. Archaeologists have discovered hundreds of fossils of ancient whales that once swam here.

في أعماق الصحراء الغربية، يوجد مكان سحري يُسمّى وادي الحيتان. منذ ملايين السنين، كانت هذه المنطقة مغطاة بمحيط ضخم جدًا. وقد اكتشف علماء الآثار مئات الحفريات لحيتان قديمة كانت تسبح هنا في الماضي.

Some of these **skeletons** are longer than 15 meters, showing incredible details of their bones. These fossils tell a remarkable story about how whales changed from land animals into the magnificent ocean creatures we know today.

بعض هذه الهياكل العظمية يزيد طولها عن ١٥ مترًا، وتُظهر تفاصيل مذهلة لعظامها. تحكي هذه الحفريات قصة رائعة عن كيفية تغيّر الحيتان من حيوانات برّية إلى مخلوقات بحرية رائعة نعرفها اليوم.

Term 2

Because of its scientific and historical importance, Wadi El-Hitan has become a world heritage site. Visitors can walk along the desert **trails** and see the fossils lying exactly where they were found. It feels like **visiting** a natural museum, where every fossil tells a story. Egypt has protected this area carefully to ensure the **fossils** remain safe for future generations.

بسبب أهميته العلمية والتاريخية، أصبح وادي الحيتان موقعًا من مواقع التراث العالمي. يمكن للزوار السير على مسارات الصحراء ورؤية الحفريات الموجودة تمامًا في المكان الذي وُجدت فيه. ويشعر المرء كأنه يزور متحفًا طبيعيًا، حيث تروي كل حفرة قصة. وقد قامت مصر بحماية هذه المنطقة بعناية لضمان بقاء الحفريات آمنة للأجيال القادمة.

Wadi El-Hitan is not just a place of science; it is a **symbol** of Egypt's rich natural history, reminding young people to **appreciate** and feel proud of their country's treasures.

وادي الحيتان ليس مجرد مكان للعلم، بل هو رمز للتاريخ الطبيعي الغني لمصر، يذكر الشباب بتقدير كنوز بلادهم والشعور بالفخر بها.

Choose the correct answer:



Student's
Book

- Wadi El-Hitan is also known as
 a) The Valley of Kings b) The Valley of the Whales
 c) The Valley of the Desert
- Some whale skeletons are
 a) 5 meters long b) 10 meters long
 c) more than 15 meters long
- Egypt protects this site to
 a) build new museums b) keep fossils safe
 c) bring more water

Answer the following questions:



Student's
Book

- Why is Wadi El-Hitan special?
 ▶
- How has Egypt helped protect the site?
 ▶

Tip!



Writing a short blog كتابة مدونة قصيرة

- 1 Start with a title that catches attention. ابدأ بعنوان يجذب الانتباه.

▶ Example: The Hidden Wonders of Wadi El-Hitan

روائع وادي الحيتان الخفية

- 2 Write the date and your name. اكتب التاريخ واسمك.

▶ Example: Posted on March 2025 ,15

نُشر في 51 مارس 2025

By Salma, Student Explorer

بواسطة سلمى، طالبة مستكشفة

- 3 Use paragraphs to organize your ideas. استخدم فقرات لتنظيم أفكارك.

▶ Example: In the Western Desert, far from busy cities, lies a magical place called Wadi El-Hitan.

في الصحراء الغربية، بعيدًا عن المدن المزدحمة، يوجد مكان سحري يُسمى وادي الحيتان.

- 4 Describe the place or event clearly. صف المكان أو الحدث بوضوح.

▶ Example: The area is full of ancient whale fossils lying exactly where they were found. It feels like walking inside a natural museum.

المنطقة مليئة بحفريات الحيتان القديمة الموجودة تمامًا في أماكنها الأصلية. ويشعر الزائر كأنه يسير داخل متحف طبيعي.

- 5 Share your feelings or opinion. شارك مشاعرك أو رأيك.

▶ Example: I felt amazed to see how life looked millions of years ago. It made me proud to be Egyptian.

شعرت بالدهشة وأنا أرى كيف كانت الحياة قبل ملايين السنين، وجعلني ذلك أشعر بالفخر لكوني مصرية.

- 6 End with a take-home message.

اختم برسالة أو فكرة يستفيد منها القارئ.

▶ Example: We must protect Egypt's hidden treasures so future generations can enjoy them too.

يجب علينا حماية كنوز مصر الخفية حتى تستمتع بها الأجيال القادمة أيضًا.

Egypt's Hidden Wonders Tour SB

Create your own travel brochure

Title: **Discover Egypt's Hidden Treasures**

Slogan: Where History Meets Adventure!

① **About the place:**

Egypt is full of magical places waiting to be explored — from green oases to ancient temples in the golden desert.

One of the most special sites is Deir el-Medina, where ancient artists once lived. It's a place that shows how daily life looked thousands of years ago.

② **What you can see or do:**

Walk through ancient villages and tombs
Discover beautiful wall paintings and carvings
Explore the desert trails
Take photos and enjoy Egypt's warm sunshine

③ **Visitor comment:**

"It felt like traveling back in time! The art and stories on the walls are amazing."

④ **Travel information:**

Location: Luxor, southern Egypt

How to get there: By train or bus from Cairo to Luxor, then a short taxi ride

Best time to visit: October to April (cool and pleasant weather)

What to bring: Hat, water bottle, camera, notebook



Exercises on Lessons & 5

1 Choose the correct answer:

1. Wadi El-Hitan is known as the Valley of the
 a) Lions b) Whales c) Birds d) Fish
2. Millions of years ago, the area was by a big ocean.
 a) covered b) discovered c) designed d) changed
3. Archaeologists found many of ancient whales.
 a) symbols b) brochures c) treasures d) fossils
4. Some whale are longer than 15 meters.
 a) seas b) skeletons c) oceans d) stories
5. Visitors can walk along the desert to see the fossils.
 a) trails b) symbols c) treasures d) posts
6. Egypt protects this area to ensure the fossils safe.
 a) create b) remain c) change d) bring
7. This site reminds young people to their country's treasures.
 a) post b) cover c) swim d) appreciate
8. Egypt protects this site carefully for generations.
 a) old b) last c) future d) lost
9. A is the hard structure that supports an animal's body.
 a) fossil b) skeleton c) bone d) trail
10. Tourists can read a with information about the site.
 a) symbol b) trail c) travel brochure d) fossil

2

Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

natural - history - skeletons - trails - fossils

Wadi El-Hitan is a special area in Egypt's Western Desert. It is famous for the ① of ancient whales that lived millions of years ago. Visitors can walk along the desert ② and see the ③ lying in the sand. This World Heritage Site helps people learn about Egypt's rich ④ and its wonderful natural treasures.

3

Put the words in the correct order to make a complete sentence:

1. lies - Wadi El-Hitan - the - in - Desert - Western.

2. helped - How - Egypt - has - Wadi El-Hitan - protect?

?

3. seen - ever - Have - a - you - fossil?

?

4. area - covered by - This - was - a very - ocean - big.

5. story - fossils - These - tell - a - remarkable.

4

Punctuate the following:

1. wadi El-Hitan has become a world heritage

2. How has egypt helped protect the site

5

Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"A hidden Egyptian place you want to visit"

▶ What makes it special?

▶ What can people see or do there?

.....

.....

.....

Review on Unit 3

Main Vocabulary

burial	مقبرة - دفن	archaeologist	عالم آثار
mummy	مومياء	discovery	اكتشاف
chamber	غرفة	mystery	غموض - لغز
temple	معبد	ruler	حاكم
monument	أثر - نُصب تذكاري	border	حدّ - حدود
restore	يُرمّم - يستعيد	craftsman	حرفي
tour guide	مرشد سياحي	discover	يكتشف
design	يصمّم - تصميم	trail	مسار - طريق
pattern	نمط - زخرفة	visiting (n)	زيارة
skeleton	هيكل عظمي	appreciate	يُقدّر
fossil	حفريّة	symbol	رمز

Language in Use



Present Perfect Tense

زمن المضارع التام

Usage

We use the Present Perfect to talk about:

نستخدم زمن المضارع التام للحديث عن:

Actions that started in the past and continue now.

الأفعال التي بدأت في الماضي وما زالت مستمرة حتى الآن.

Example:

▶ I **have lived** in Cairo for ten years.

Things that happened recently, with results we can see today.

الأشياء التي حدثت مؤخرًا، ولها نتائج يمكننا رؤيتها اليوم.

Example:

▶ He **has painted** the walls.

Pronunciation

○ The suffix **-ify** means "to make" or "to cause to become".
لاحقة **-ify** تعني "يجعل" أو "يتسبب في أن يصبح".

○ We add **-ify** to nouns or adjectives to form verbs.
نضيف اللاحقة **-ify** إلى الأسماء أو الصفات لتكوين أفعال.

Example:

▶ pure purify يُنقى

○ The suffix **-er** means someone who performs an action.
لاحقة **-er** تعني شخصًا يقوم بفعل معين.

○ We add **-er** to verbs to form nouns.
نضيف اللاحقة **-er** إلى الأفعال لتكوين أسماء.

Example:

▶ bake baker خباز

Dictation:

remarkable	مرشد سياحي
travel brochure	مخلوقات بحرية
chamber	نقش - حفر
skeleton	رمز
emperor	الصحراء الغربية
monument	ضوء الشمس
tomb	عالم آثار
corridor	حفريات الحيتان
trail	ذو طابع فني
skilled	الحياة اليومية
southern	سحري
craftsman	تراث
enchanted	يرقم - يستعيد
historical	عالم
decorate	نمط - زخرفة
future generations	لا يُنسى
respect	كنوز
a natural museum	ينشر - يرسل
archaeologist	نهر النيل
mummified	خاص - مميز

Writing Skills

Tuna el-Gebel

Tuna el-Gebel is an ancient site near Minya that has amazed archaeologists for many years. It is famous for its underground chambers and animal mummies, especially birds. The tomb of Petosiris shows beautiful carvings combining Egyptian and Greek styles, making the site an important part of Egypt's rich history and culture.

The Temple of Dakka

The Temple of Dakka is a beautiful ancient monument located in Nubia, near Egypt's southern border. It was built thousands of years ago for the god Thoth, the god of wisdom. Over time, many rulers added carvings and walls, showing how different cultures respected Egypt's traditions and protected its great history.

Deir el-Medina

Deir el-Medina was the ancient village where skilled craftsmen and artists lived while building the royal tombs in the Valley of the Kings. They painted beautiful scenes and carved walls with great care. Archaeologists have found drawings and pottery that show how these talented workers lived and created Egypt's magnificent history.

A hidden Egyptian place you want to visit

A hidden Egyptian place I want to visit is Wadi El-Hitan, the Valley of the Whales. It's special because it shows fossils of ancient whales that lived millions of years ago. Visitors can walk along desert trails, see real skeletons, and learn how whales changed from land animals to ocean creatures.



Test 5 on Unit 3

خاص بالأزهر الشريف



1

Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

(10Ms)

monument - fossils - burial - Whales - visited - Nubia

Tourist: I've heard Egypt has many amazing historical places. Which one do you like most?

Guide: I really love Wadi El-Hitan, also called the Valley of the ①

Tourist: Oh! Why is it so special?

Guide: Because archaeologists have found hundreds of ancient ② there.

Tourist: That sounds incredible! Have you ③ Tuna el-Gebel?

Guide: Yes, it's an ancient ④ site with animal mummies and beautiful carvings.

Tourist: I also want to see the Temple of Dakka in Nubia.

Guide: You should! It's a magnificent ⑤ showing Egypt's long and proud history.

2

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

(10Ms)

1. She (finish) her art project this morning.
2. The experts have (restore) the temple carefully.
3. Tourists (not visit) the Valley of the Whales recently.
4. The temple (have) stood in Nubia for hundreds of years.
5. Engineers work to (pure) the water before it reaches our homes.

3

Choose the correct answer:

(10Ms)

1. A/An (engineer - archaeologist - artist - scientist) studies ancient objects and historical sites.
2. A (museum - school - chamber - house) is a room where people were buried in ancient Egypt.
3. The new (discovery - teacher - worker - design) of mummies made scientists very excited.
4. The experts worked hard to (destroy - move - close - restore) the old temple.
5. Deir el-Medina was home to skilled (teachers - craftsmen - singers - dancers) who built royal tombs.
6. She (did - is - was - has) visited Wadi El-Hitan before.
7. They (haven't - hasn't - not - didn't) seen the Temple of Dakka yet.
8. (Do - Did - Have - Has) tourists taken photos of the ancient carvings?
9. Has he (visit - visited - visiting - visits) the new museum near Minga?
10. The archaeologists (did discover - are discovering - has discovered - have discovered) many fossils in the Western Desert.

4

Read and circle the odd one out, and replace it with a correct one:

(10Ms)

1. archaeologist - discovery - tomb - baker
2. computer - desert - ocean - fossils
3. temple - paper - monument - border
4. magnificent - remarkable - paint - magical
5. clarify - beautify - simplify - run

Term 2

5

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

(10Ms)

In the desert of Egypt, archaeologists have discovered many important sites such as Wadi El-Hitan and Tuna el-Gebel. These areas are full of ancient fossils, mummies, and hidden chambers that tell stories about Egypt's past. Experts have restored old monuments and temples to keep them safe for future generations. Each new discovery helps scientists understand the daily life and history of this remarkable land. Visitors from around the world come to explore these sites, admire the carvings, and learn about the achievements of ancient Egyptians.



Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Archaeologists study Wadi El-Hitan and Tuna el-Gebel to learn about the past. ()
2. Fossils and mummies show how people and animals lived long ago. ()
3. Visitors visit these sites to swim and play games there. ()



Choose the correct answer:

4. Archaeologists have discovered many ancient (computers - fossils - cars) in Egypt.
5. Experts have restored old monuments and temples to keep them (safe - dangerous - careless).

6

Write a paragraph of (5) sentences using the following guiding elements:

(10Ms)



► fossils - desert - history - scientists - discover

Test 6 on Unit 3

1

Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:



Total

30

(2Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

- 1. Wadi El-Hitan is also known as the Valley of the Whales. (.....)
- 2. Scientists have discovered many temples in Wadi El-Hitan. (.....)
- 3. The fossils show how whales changed from land animals into ocean creatures. (.....)
- 4. Visitors can walk along the desert paths to see the fossils. (.....)

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(2Ms)

- 1. Experts worked hard to the old temple and protect it.
a) cover b) build c) restore d) play
- 2. A/An studies ancient objects and old sites.
a) engineer b) baker c) painter d) archaeologist
- 3. Egypt protected its ancient monuments for many years.
a) have b) is c) has d) were
- 4. The tourists seen the mummies yet.
a) haven't b) hasn't c) aren't d) didn't

3

Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

sunlight - emperors - gates - walls - monument

The Temple of Dakka stands proudly in Nubia, near Egypt's southern border. This ancient ① was built to honor the god Toth. Over time, Greek and Roman ② added new walls and carvings. Today, visitors can walk through its tall ③ and see the ④ shining on the beautiful stones. Archaeologists study the temple to learn more about ancient Egyptian religion and architecture.

4**Read the text and answer the questions:****(7Ms)**

Egypt is full of wonderful ancient sites. In the Western Desert, Wadi El-Hitan shows the fossils of ancient whales that once lived in the ocean. Near Minya, Tuna el-Gebel is famous for its animal mummies and the tomb of Petosiris. In Nubia, the Temple of Dakka stands as a monument to Egypt's long history. And at Deir el-Medina, visitors can see where the craftsmen who built the royal tombs once lived with their families. These sites help people understand ancient Egyptian life, culture, and the incredible skills of its people.

A**Choose the correct answer:**

- Deir el-Medina was home to skilled
 a) artists b) craftsmen c) kings d) farmers
- Wadi El-Hitan is famous for ancient
 a) temples b) mummies c) fossils d) carvings

B**Answer the following questions:**

- Where is Tuna el-Gebel located?
 ►
- Why is the Temple of Dakka important to Egypt's history?
 ►
- What can visitors learn from visiting Deir el-Medina?
 ►

5**Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:****(4Ms)**

- Many tourists (**not visit**) the tomb of Petosiris.
- Egypt (**move**) the Temple of Dakka to higher ground.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2Ms)

1. temple - **The** - stands - Nubia - in - proudly.

▶

2. animal - preserved - **Tuna el-Gebel** - has - many - mummies.

▶

7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. Have you visited the valley of the Kings before

▶

2. a baker makes fresh bread

▶

8 Write an email of SIXTY (60) words using the words below: (7Ms)

Write an email to your friend Younis, telling him about your visit to the Pyramids in Giza. What did you see there? Who did you go with? Your email address is Zain@yahoo.com, and your friend's email address is Younis@mail.com.

📍 ☆ 📎 A 🗑️

From

:

To

:

Subject

:

Review 1 | On Units 1-2-3

Test 7 based on units 1 - 2 - 3

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

1

Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

(10Ms)

sketch - statue - artist - mural - palette - canvas

Sarah : Salma, do you remember that wonderful art exhibition we visited last month? It was about a very famous Egyptian artist.

Salma : Yes, of course! It was about Mahmoud Mokhtar. He made a huge ① called Nahdit Masr.

Sarah : I still can't believe how he started carving something so big. I also saw his first ② for it.

Salma : I saw that too! But I actually preferred the colorful ③ he created on the wall.

Sarah : Same here. And did you notice the small ④ he painted when he was a student?

Salma : Yes, it was displayed next to his old ⑤ and tiny paintbrush. He was incredibly talented!

2

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

(10Ms)

1. Many tourists (not visit) the tomb of Petosiris.
2. The museum (whose) we visited had old fabrics.
3. The student (who) invention won was happy.
4. Art is (either) boring nor difficult; it is exciting and creative.
5. A (teach) helps students learn.

3

Choose the correct answer:

(10Ms)

1. The museum displayed a beautiful (**sculpture** - paper - border) made of bronze.
2. Before building the loom, the engineer drew a (**palette** - blueprint - mural) showing the parts needed.
3. The prefix "re-" in "rebuild" means (**very** - again - opposite).
4. Archaeologists have carefully (**ignored** - destroyed - discovered) the fossils to study them.
5. The new device is a small (**gadget** - temple - ruler) used to help students learn.
6. My friends (**has** - have - had) never visited Tuna el-Gebel before.
7. The temple is (**either** - neither - both) old and beautifully restored.
8. The woman (**who** - which - whose) discovered the tomb shared the news with the team.
9. The tool (**where** - who - that) the workers used was made of wood.
10. Visitors can choose either a painting (**and** - or - nor) a sculpture for their art project.

4

Read and circle the odd one out, and replace it with a correct one:

(10Ms)

1. teacher - purify - baker - driver
2. Luxor - Cairo - Alexandria - gallery
3. artist - wood - fabric - paper
4. discover - design - craftsman - decorate
5. clarify - beautify - bake - simplify

5

Read the text and answer the questions:

(10Ms)

The Aswan Dam is an important structure in southern Egypt. It was built to control the Nile's floods and provide electricity for homes, factories, and villages. The dam stores water that farmers use to grow crops all year, helping agriculture in the region. Made of stone and concrete, it protects nearby communities and ensures a clean water supply. The energy and resources from the dam have improved life for many people. It is one of Egypt's most important modern achievements.

A

Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. The Aswan Dam helps prevent the Nile from flooding. ()
2. The dam only provides water for factories, not for farmers. ()
3. The dam is made of stone and concrete. ()

B

Choose the correct answer:

4. The Aswan Dam provides (electricity - oil - sand) for homes, factories, and villages.
5. Farmers use water from the dam to (sell - grow - paint) their crops all year.

6

Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements:

(10Ms)

"The Grand Egyptian Museum"



visit - galleries - treasures - tourists - artifacts

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 8 based on units 1 - 2 - 3

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:



(2Ms)

1. Tuna el-Gebel is located near Minya. ()
2. Only human mummies have been discovered at Tuna el-Gebel. ()
3. The site has underground chambers and long corridors. ()
4. Walking through Tuna el-Gebel feels like visiting a new city. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(2Ms)

1. A smartphone is a small (gadget - palette - mural - pendulum) that helps people work and talk.
2. A new idea that has never been done before is called an (attention - invention - mention - extension) .
3. The engineer, (whose - which - who - where) designed the bridge, is very experienced.
4. If we (uses - using - used - use) renewable energy, the environment will be cleaner.

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

shades - patterns - effort - tool - polished

I made a beautiful clay bowl in art class. It has a round shape with a smooth surface, and I decorated the middle with small ① I used different colors of clay and mixed them to make new ② After it dried, I carefully ③ the bowl to make it shiny. I also shaped the edges with a wooden ④ I'm proud of my work because I spent time and effort to make it look special.

4

Read the text and answer the questions:

(7Ms)

Long ago, ancient Egyptian workers developed clever tools that helped them create strong and beautiful cloth. Before starting their work, a designer, who understood measurements well, prepared a clear plan showing how each part should fit together. After that, skilled workers assembled the wooden frame, making sure it was steady and safe to use. When the tool was ready, people wove linen threads to produce fabric with different colors and patterns. This early method showed great creativity and became the foundation for many modern weaving machines used today.



Choose the correct answer:

- A designer prepared a clear plan to show how each part should
 a) taste b) fit together c) read d) clean
- Workers made sure the wooden frame was before using it.
 a) noisy b) cold c) empty d) steady



Answer the following questions:

- What did people make with the linen threads?
 ▶
- What did workers use to make fabric?
 ▶
- Summarize the text in one sentence.
 ▶

5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

(4Ms)

- Have you (notice) the patterns on the walls?
- The new robot (who) students made in the workshop worked perfectly.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2Ms)

1. farmers - dam - How - help - does - the?

..... ?

2. site - become - a - world - Wadi El-Hitan - has - heritage.

.....

7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. who was the artist at the exhibition

.....

2. the country uses solar and wind power

.....

8 Write an email of SIXTY (60) words using the words below: (7Ms)

"A visit to the art gallery"

What can you see at the art gallery?
Who is your favorite artist?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Unit 4

Egypt on The Move

مصر على الطريق

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit, students will be able to:



Listening

- Understand the main ideas and specific details in short talks and interviews about transportation, industries, and Egypt's progress.
- Follow short spoken instructions about travel, building, or city life.
- Identify vocabulary in context while listening to information about modern Egypt.
- Recognize key phrases and expressions related to innovation and development.



Speaking

- Use transportation and construction vocabulary in role-plays and discussions.
- Ask and answer questions about Egypt's new projects and industries.
- Compare Egypt's past and present using used to / didn't use to structures in spoken sentences.
- Describe and present a modern Egyptian city clearly.



Reading

- Read and understand informational texts about Egypt's new cities, roads, and industries.
- Identify main ideas, supporting details, and sequence of events in texts.
- Recognize and understand prefixes and suffixes (-in-, -en) in context.
- Make simple inferences about how development projects improve life in Egypt.



Writing

- Write short paragraphs describing Egypt's progress, including past and present comparisons.
- Use used to / didn't use to correctly in sentences about Egypt's changes.
- Write a descriptive paragraph about a modern Egyptian city.
- Create a simple flyer encouraging people to visit a famous place in Egypt.

Lesson 1

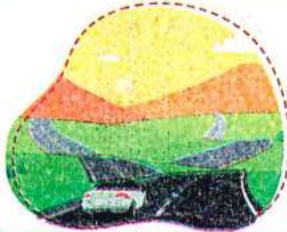
Egypt's New Landscape

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية

**infrastructure**

البنية التحتية

**highway**

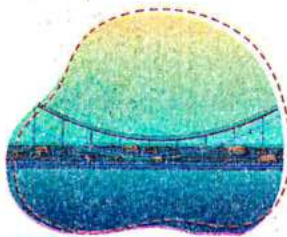
طريق سريع

**extend**

يُمدّ / يوسّع

**transportation**

وسائل النقل / المواصلات

**bridge**

جسر / كوبري

**The New Administrative Capital**

العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة

**determination**

العزيمة / الإصرار

**innovation**

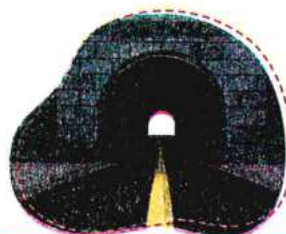
الابتكار

**goods**

البضائع

**power supplies**

إمدادات الطاقة

**tunnel**

نفق

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

investment	استثمار	will	إرادة
project	مشروع	economy	الاقتصاد
network	شبكة	service	خدمة
growth	نمو	development	تطوير / تنمية
nation	أمة / وطن	progress	تقدم
future	مستقبل	system	نظام
the past	الماضي	construction	بناء / تشييد
recipe	وصفة (طبخ)	government	حكومة
ideas	أفكار	messages	رسائل
creativity	إبداع	especially	خصوصًا / خاصة
method	طريقة / أسلوب	area	منطقة
well-being	الرفاهية / الصحة الجيدة		

Adjectives

صفات

recent	حديث / مؤخر	safe	آمن
effective	فعال	large	كبير
crowded	مزدحم	narrow	ضيق
patient	صبور	skilled	ماهر
difficult	صعب	connected	مترابط / متصل
modern	حديث / عصري	closer	أقرب
prepared	مستعد	great	عظيم / كبير
few	قليل	wide	واسع
national	وطني	proud	فخور
empty	فارغ	creative	مبدع

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

in recent years	في السنوات الأخيرة	work effectively	يعمل بفعالية
in the past	في الماضي	in order to	لغرض / لكي
along with	إلى جانب / مع	all parts of the country	كل أنحاء البلاد
closer together	أقرب لبعضهم البعض	continues to grow and develop	يواصل النمو والتطور
well-being of its people	رفاهية شعبه	prepared for the future	مستعد للمستقبل
took a long time	استغرق وقتًا طويلًا	more easily	بسهولة أكبر

Definitions تعريفات

infrastructure	Roads, bridges, and systems that help a country work.
construction	The act of building something, especially large projects.
innovation	New and creative ideas or methods.
determination	A strong will to keep trying until you succeed.
extend	To make something larger or cover a wider area.

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
travel	يسافر / يتنقل	traveled	traveled
connect	يربط	connected	connected
extend	يمدّ / يوسع	extended	extended
improve	يحسّن	improved	improved
allow	يسمح	allowed	allowed
reach	يصل	reached	reached

Present		Past	p.p.
prepare	يُحَضِّر / يَجْهِّز	prepared	prepared
invest	يَسْتثمر	invested	invested
progress	يَتَقَدَّم	progressed	progressed
crowd	يَزْدحم	crowded	crowded
develop	يَطوِّر	developed	developed
continue	يواصل / يستمر	continued	continued
reflect	يَعكس / يُظْهر	reflected	reflected
change	يغيّر	changed	changed

أفعال غير منتظمة Irregular verbs

Present		Past	PP
take	يأخذ / يستغرق	took	taken
build	يبني	built	built
show	يُظْهر	showed	shown
grow	ينمو / يتطور	grew	grown
bring	يجلب	brought	brought
make	يصنع / يجعل	made	made

Listen and learn



Egypt has started new infrastructure projects in recent years. These are projects and services, such as transportation and power supplies, that the country uses in order to work effectively.

لقد بدأت مصر في تنفيذ مشاريع بنية تحتية جديدة في السنوات الأخيرة.



هذه المشاريع والخدمات - مثل وسائل النقل ومصادر الطاقة - التي تستخدمها الدولة لكي تعمل بفعالية.

In the past, roads were narrow, often crowded, and traveling between cities took a long time. People had to be patient, and transporting **goods** was slow and difficult.

في الماضي، كانت الطرق ضيقة وغالبًا مزدحمة، وكان السفر بين المدن يستغرق وقتًا طويلًا. كان على الناس أن يكونوا صبورين، كما كان نقل البضائع بطيئًا وصعبًا.

Today, skilled engineers are building modern **highways**, bridges, and tunnels that connect all parts of the country. These projects show Egypt's **determination** to **extend** its road network and improve daily life. The New Administrative Capital, along with the new bridges in Cairo, shows how the nation continues to grow and develop.

اليوم، يقوم مهندسون ماهرون ببناء طرق سريعة حديثة وجسور وأنفاق تربط جميع أنحاء البلاد. تُظهر هذه المشاريع إصرار مصر على توسيع شبكة طرقها وتحسين الحياة اليومية. تُظهر العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة، إلى جانب الجسور الجديدة في القاهرة، كيف تستمر الأمة في النمو والتطور.

Modern transportation systems allow people to travel faster, **transport goods**, and reach work and school more easily. Every new project not only **improves** Egypt's economy but also brings the country closer together, making it more connected and prepared for the future.

تتيح أنظمة النقل الحديثة للناس السفر بسرعة أكبر، ونقل البضائع، والوصول إلى العمل والمدرسة بسهولة أكبر. وكل مشروع جديد لا يُحسّن اقتصاد مصر فحسب، بل يُقرب أجزاء البلاد من بعضها البعض أيضًا، مما يجعلها أكثر ترابطًا واستعدادًا للمستقبل.

Egypt's investment in **infrastructure** shows its efforts towards projects to progress and the well-being of its people.

تُظهر استثمارات مصر في البنية التحتية جهودها في تنفيذ مشاريع تهدف إلى التقدم وتحقيق رفاهية شعبها.

Write (T) true or (F) false:



1. In the past, roads in Egypt were wide and empty. (.....)
2. Traveling between cities used to take a long time. (.....)
3. Today, there are fewer bridges and tunnels in Egypt. (.....)
4. Engineers are working to make travel faster and safer. (.....)
5. The new projects make Egyptians proud of their country. (.....)

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Egypt is improving through new projects. 
 - a) sports
 - b) development
 - c) music
 - d) clothing
2. Engineers are working on a new 
 - a) painting
 - b) highway
 - c) market
 - d) recipe
3. The government is improving the country's by building new roads.
 - a) sports
 - b) infrastructure
 - c) nature
 - d) energy
4. The new in Cairo helps cars move across the river easily.
 - a) library
 - b) park
 - c) hospital
 - d) bridge
5. Egypt has shown great to finish its national projects.
 - a) delay
 - b) weakness
 - c) determination
 - d) fear
6. The company plans to the road to make it wider.
 - a) close
 - b) extend
 - c) paint
 - d) cross
7. The country continues to show great through new inventions.
 - a) innovation
 - b) pollution
 - c) celebration
 - d) imagination
8. The new plan is very and helps students learn faster.
 - a) difficult
 - b) effective
 - c) crowded
 - d) slow
9. The country's is growing stronger because of new projects.
 - a) color
 - b) climate
 - c) economy
 - d) festival

2 Fill in the blanks using words from the box:



innovation - determination - infrastructure - extend - highways

1. Egypt has improved its through new roads, bridges, and tunnels.
2. The government shows great in completing national projects.
3. Teams of engineers work hard to build modern to connect all parts of the country.

4. The country continues to its road network every year.
5. Modern projects reflect Egypt's creativity and

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Engineers are building highways, tunnels, and bridges to make transportation faster and safer for people and goods. With determination and clever innovations, the road network continues to extend every year. Reliable power supplies support these projects and help cities run smoothly. The New Administrative Capital shows how smart planning and investment can improve daily life. These projects not only boost the economy but also connect communities across Egypt. Modern infrastructure helps people travel, work, and live better while preparing the nation for the future.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Engineers are building highways, tunnels, and bridges to make transportation faster and safer for
 a) animals b) people and goods c) toys d) machines
2. Reliable support these projects and help cities run smoothly.
 a) schools b) books c) power supplies d) restaurants

B Answer the following questions:

3. How do the projects in Egypt help the economy and communities?

4. What does the New Administrative Capital show about Egypt's planning and investment?

5. Give a suitable title to the text.

4

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. roads - were - In - narrow - the past, - the.

2. Engineers - modern - tunnels - bridges - building - are - and.

3. projects - new - started - Egypt - has - infrastructure.

4. allow - systems - people - faster - Transportation - to travel.

5

Punctuate the following:

1. What problems did Egypt have with roads

2. Today skilled engineers are building modern highways

6

Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"Modern Engineering and New Roads"**Ideas to help you:**

► bridges and tunnels

► safer transportation

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Lesson 2

Building Egypt's Modern Economy

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



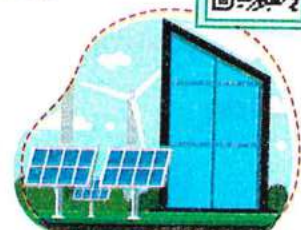
textile نسيج



steel industry صناعة الفولاذ / الحديد



industrial صناعي



solar energy الطاقة الشمسية



manufacture يصنع - إنتاج



power source مصدر الطاقة



self-reliant معتمد على الذات



wind energy طاقة الرياح

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

fabrics	أقمشة	cement	أسمنت
Middle East	الشرق الأوسط	fuel	وقود
product	منتج	importing	استيراد
machine	آلة	textbooks	كتب دراسية
farming	الزراعة	natural gas	الغاز الطبيعي
hard work	العمل الجاد	factory	مصنع
mainly	بشكل أساسي	clean power	طاقة نظيفة
light up	يشعل / يضيء	export	يُصدّر
teamwork	العمل الجماعي	distance	مسافة

Unit 4

Adjectives

صفات

strong	قوي	different	مختلف
small	صغير	local	محلي
high-quality	عالي الجودة	Egyptian	مصري
clean	نظيف	online	عبر الإنترنت

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

becoming one of the strongest يصبح واحدًا من الأقوى	used to	اعتاد أن
has changed greatly تغير بشكل كبير	are sold in	تُباع في
contribute to a growing economy يساهم في اقتصاد متنامٍ	proud of their country	فخرون ببلدهم
believes in	light up the future	ينير المستقبل
depend on	يعتمد على	

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	p.p.
manufacture يَصْنَعُ / يَصْنَعُ باستخدام الآلات	manufactured	manufactured
change يَتَغَيَّرُ / يَغَيِّرُ	changed	changed
produce يَنْتِجُ	produced	produced
depend يَعْتَمِدُ	depended	depended
believe يُؤْمِنُ / يَعْتَقِدُ	believed	believed
contribute يَسَاهِمُ / يَشَارِكُ فِي	contributed	contributed
exist يُوجَدُ	existed	existed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	p.p.
get	يُحصل	got	got / gotten
sell	يبيع	sold	sold
build	يبنى	built	built
find	يجد	found	found
light	يُضيء	lit	lit

Read and learn



Egypt is becoming one of the strongest **industrial** countries in Africa and the Middle East. In the past, life was very different. People **used to** depend mainly on farming and small local jobs, and most villages **didn't use to** have factories or machines. We used to get many products from other countries. Transportation **used to** be slow, and there were fewer jobs in cities.



مصر أصبحت واحدة من أقوى الدول الصناعية في إفريقيا والشرق الأوسط. في الماضي، كانت الحياة مختلفة جدًا. كان الناس يعتمدون بشكل أساسي على الزراعة وعلى الوظائف المحلية الصغيرة، ولم تكن معظم القرى تمتلك مصانع أو آلات. كنا نعتاد الحصول على العديد من المنتجات من دول أخرى. وكانت وسائل النقل بطيئة، الوظائف في المدن قليلة.

Today, Egypt has changed greatly. The **textile** industry in cities like Mahalla produces high-quality clothes and fabrics. These products are sold in Egypt and other countries. The food industry now manufactures many Egyptian products such as pasta, juice, and snacks. Egypt has also developed a strong **steel industry**, which helps build new roads, bridges, and houses.

اليوم، تغيّرت مصر بشكل كبير. تقوم صناعة النسيج في مدن مثل المحلة بإنتاج ملابس وأقمشة عالية الجودة. ويتم بيع هذه المنتجات في مصر ودول أخرى. كما تقوم صناعة الغذاء الآن بتصنيع العديد من المنتجات المصرية مثل المكرونة والعصائر والوجبات الخفيفة. وقد طوّرت مصر أيضًا صناعة الفولاذ القوي، والتي تساعد في بناء الطرق والجسور والمنازل الجديدة.

New **power sources** such as natural gas, solar energy, and wind energy are being used to create clean power for homes and factories. These changes have made Egypt more modern and more **self-reliant**. تُستخدم مصادر طاقة جديدة مثل الغاز الطبيعي والطاقة الشمسية وطاقة الرياح لإنتاج طاقة نظيفة للمنازل والمصانع. وقد جعلت هذه التغييرات مصر أكثر حداثة وأكثر اعتمادًا على نفسها. As the country builds new factories, more Egyptians find work and contribute to a growing economy. People today are proud of their country and how it is developing every day. Egypt's industries show how a nation can grow stronger when it believes in innovation, hard work, and teamwork. The factories that once didn't exist now light up the future for millions.

ومع قيام البلاد ببناء مصانع جديدة، يجد المزيد من المصريين عملاً ويساهمون في اقتصاد متنامٍ. يعتز الناس اليوم ببلدهم وبالطريقة التي يتطور بها كل يوم. وتُظهر الصناعات المصرية كيف يمكن لأمة أن تصبح أقوى عندما تؤمن بالابتكار والعمل الجاد والعمل الجماعي. إن المصانع التي لم تكن موجودة من قبل تُضيء الآن مستقبل ملايين الناس.

Write (T) true or (F) false:



1. In the past, most Egyptians worked in factories. (.....)
2. The textile industry in Mahalla produces fabrics and clothes. (.....)
3. Egypt didn't use to have big factories. (.....)
4. The food industry produces only snacks for export. (.....)
5. Egypt is now using solar and wind energy as power sources. (.....)

Answer the following questions

1. What did most Egyptians use to do in the past?

.....

2. How has Egypt become more self-reliant today?

.....



Language in Use:

Used to

اعتاد أن



Study this example situation:

Example:

► Nicola **used to travel** a lot.

اعتادت نيكولا على السفر كثيراً.

► **Nowadays**, Nicola stays at home

في الوقت الحاضر، تبقى نيكولا في المنزل



► When we say, "Nicola **used to travel**", it means she **traveled often in the past**. But she doesn't do that now.

عندما نقول: "اعتادت نيكولا على السفر"، فهذا يعني أنها سافرت كثيراً في الماضي. لكنها لا تفعل ذلك الآن.

Used to

used to + the base verb

I **used to play** football. (I don't play now)

Examples:

- ▶ I **used to play** tennis a lot, but I **don't play very much now**.
اعتدت أن ألعب التنس كثيرا، لكنني لا ألعب كثيرا الآن.
- ▶ David **used to spend** a lot of money on clothes. **These days he can't afford it**.
اعتاد ديفيد أن ينفق الكثير من المال على الملابس. لكنه هذه الأيام لا يستطيع تحمل ذلك.

Negative Sentences الجمل المنفية

(didn't use to) (لم أكن معتادا أن)

- For negative, use "**didn't**" + the base verb.

○ للنفي، استخدم **didn't** + أصل الفعل.

Negative

I - he - she - it
we - they - you

didn't use to + base verb.

Examples:

- ▶ I **didn't** use to be thin.
لم أكن معتادًا أن أكون نحيفا.
- ▶ I **didn't** use to have gray hair.
لم أكن معتادًا أن يكون لدي شعر رمادي.

Forming Questions تكوين الأسئلة

Did you use to?

هل كنت معتادا أن....؟

- For questions, use:

Did + subject + **use to** + the base verb?

(هل كنت معتادًا أن....؟)

○ للأسئلة، استخدم **Did** + الفاعل + **use to** + أصل الفعل.

Yes/No Questions أسئلة نعم/لا

Did

I - he - she - it
we - they - you

use to + base verb?

Examples:

- ▶ Did you use to play tennis? هل اعتدت أن تلعب التنس؟
- ▶ Did you use to be fat? هل اعتدت أن تكون سميناً؟
- ▶ Did you use to have black hair? هل اعتدت أن يكون لديك شعر أسود؟

Short Answers

الإجابات المختصرة

▶ Did you use to play tennis?

➔ Yes, I did.

➔ No, I didn't.

Choose the correct verb form for each sentence:

- My mom cakes every weekend.
a) used to bake b) use to bake c) used to baked
- walk to school?
a) Did you used to b) Did you use to c) Were you used to
- We a pet.
a) didn't used to have b) didn't use to have
c) not used to have
- She glasses when she was little.
a) used to wear b) use to wear c) used to wore
- play the piano?
a) Was he use to b) Did he used to c) Did he use to
- I loud music.
a) didn't use to like b) didn't used to like c) not use to like
- have a big car?
a) Did they used to b) Did they use to c) Were they use to
- We TV much.
a) didn't use to watch b) not used to watch
c) didn't used to watch

Exercises on Lesson 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. The word textile refers to: SB
 a) food b) fabric c) fuel d) cement
2. To is to produce goods using machines. SB
 a) manufacture b) clean c) build d) clear
3. Egypt is becoming more self-reliant, which means: SB
 a) depending on other countries b) depending on itself
 c) closing its factories d) importing more goods
4. Cairo has many to produce steel and goods.
 a) factories b) forests c) rivers d) mountains
5. The company produces many to sell in markets
 a) clouds b) hard work c) wind d) products
6. Egypt has a large industry that produce iron and metal products.
 a) textile b) steel c) wind d) products
7. People live in small villages in the past.
 a) use to b) used to c) using to d) uses to
8. My grandfather work in a big factory. He worked on a farm.
 a) not use to b) don't use to
 c) didn't use to d) didn't used to
9. people use to travel by camels in the desert?
 a) Are b) Did c) Does d) Do
10. Did your grandparents to make their own clothes?
 a) uses b) used c) use d) using
11. Factories be common in small towns in the past.
 a) didn't use to b) used to
 c) use to d) weren't used to
12. your sister use to travel by train?
 a) Do b) Does c) Did d) Are

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

steel – clothes – manufacture – self-reliant – textile

Egypt is one of the strongest industrial countries in Africa and the Middle East. It has a large ① industry that produces many fabrics for ② The ③ industry also helps build bridges and buildings. Egypt uses different power sources such as natural gas, solar energy, and wind energy. The country wants to become ④ and manufacture more products locally.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

In the past, many people in Egypt used to live in a village and work in farming. Today, Egypt is becoming more industrial. Many workers have jobs in factories where they manufacture different products like clothes, pasta, and juice. Some factories use natural gas as a power source, while others try to use solar energy and wind energy because they are clean power. With teamwork and hard work, Egypt hopes to become more self-reliant in the future.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- In the past, many people in Egypt used to live in a
a) city b) factory c) village d) school
- Some factories use solar energy and wind energy because they are
a) expensive b) clean power c) dangerous d) slow

B Answer the following questions:

- What did people in Egypt use to do in the past?

▶

- Name two products that factories manufacture today.

▶

Unit 4

5. Why does Egypt want teamwork and hard work?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. to - depend - used - farming - People - on.

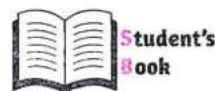
2. helps - industry - The - steel - build - bridges.

3. light - up - new - factories - the future - Many.

4. proud - today - of their - are - People - country.

5. and - help - hard work - Teamwork - Egypt - grow stronger.

5 Complete the sentences with used to, didn't use to, or did ... use to



1. Egypt depend mainly on farming before modern industries.

2. People work in large factories in the past.

3. Egypt export textiles to other countries years ago?

4. Workers have advanced machines to help in manufacturing.

5. The country build strong bridges and roads to connect new cities.

6 Punctuate the following:

1. egypt builds more factories in new cities



2. What new industries are growing in Egypt

▶

3. How amazing Egypt's progress is

▶

4. Most villages didn't use to have factories.

▶

5. There are many Egyptian products, such as pasta, juice, and snacks.

▶

7 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"The Textile Industry"

fabrics - power sources

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

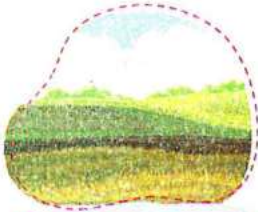
.....

.....



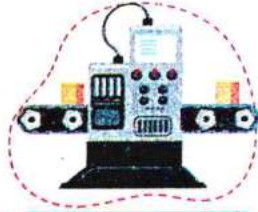
Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



field

حقل



machine

آلة



factory

مصنع

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

shop	متجر / محل	abroad	في الخارج
facilities	مرافق	zone	منطقة / نطاق
changes	تغييرات	truly	حقاً / فعلاً
trade	التجارة	tourism	السياحة
furniture	أثاث	technology	التكنولوجيا
coal	فحم	oil	نפט / زيت
airport	مطار	firewood	حطب

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

make goods quickly صناعة البضائع بسرعة	growing stronger every day يزداد قوة كل يوم
sold across the country يُباع في جميع أنحاء البلاد	even abroad وحتى في الخارج
work in modern facilities العمل في مرافق حديثة	to support these changes لدعم هذه التغييرات

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present

Past

PP

support

يدعم

supported

supported

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present

Past

PP

sell

يبدأ

sold

sold

become

يُظهر / يعرض

became

become

Listen and learn



Egypt used to depend mostly on farming, and most people worked in fields or small local shops.

مصر كانت تعتمد في الماضي بشكل رئيسي على الزراعة، وكان معظم الناس يعملون في الحقول أو في متاجر محلية صغيرة.

There weren't many factories, and people didn't use to have machines to make goods quickly.

لم تكن هناك العديد من المصانع، ولم يكن لدى الناس آلات لصنع البضائع بسرعة.

But today, Egypt has developed many new industries. The textile factories produce clothes and fabrics that are sold across the country and even abroad.

لكن اليوم، طورت مصر العديد من الصناعات الجديدة. مصانع النسيج تنتج الملابس والأقمشة التي تُباع في جميع أنحاء البلاد وحتى في الخارج.

Engineers work in modern facilities that use solar and wind power to create clean energy.

The government also builds new roads, bridges, and industrial zones to support these changes.

يعمل المهندسون في مرافق حديثة تستخدم الطاقة الشمسية وطاقة الرياح لإنتاج طاقة نظيفة.
كما تبني الحكومة طرقًا وجسورًا ومناطق صناعية جديدة لدعم هذه التغييرات.

Egyptians are proud because their country has become more self-reliant and industrial.

Egypt truly doesn't look like it used to — it's growing stronger every day!

المصريون فخورون لأن بلدهم أصبح بلداً صناعياً وأكثر اعتماداً على نفسه.

مصر حقًا لا تبدو كما كانت من قبل — فهي تزدهر بقوة كل يوم!

Read and write T (True) or F (False):



Student's Book

1. In the past, Egypt used to have many factories. ()
2. People didn't use to have machines to make goods quickly. ()
3. Today, Egypt's industries include textiles and clean energy. ()
4. The government doesn't support new highways. ()
5. Egypt has become more self-reliant and industrial. ()

Choose the correct word:



Student's Book

1. What did Egypt mainly depend on in the past?
 a) Farming b) Tourism c) Technology d) Trade
2. What do textile factories in Egypt produce today?
 a) Solar panels b) Clothes and fabrics
 c) Cement d) Furniture
3. What type of energy is Egypt using now?
 a) Oil and coal b) Solar and wind
 c) Water and gas d) Firewood
4. What helps connect the new industrial zones?
 a) Airports b) Schools c) Roads and bridges d) Rivers
5. How do Egyptians feel about the country's progress?
 a) Angry b) Tired c) Proud d) Worried

Pronunciation



Prefixes

- The prefix "en-"
- It comes at the **beginning** of a word. يأتي في بداية الكلمة.
- It means to cause to be or to put into or «in» and is used to turn nouns and adjectives into verbs. يجعل شيئًا ما أو شخصًا ما في حالة معينة، ويُستخدم لتحويل الأسماء أو الصفات إلى أفعال.

Word	en- (prefix)	
rich	enrich	يُثري / يجعل غنيًا
large	enlarge	يُكَبِّر / يجعل أكبر
courage	encourage	يُشجِّع / يعطي شجاعة
danger	endanger	يُعْزِز للخطر

Example:

- The teacher **encouraged** us to try harder.

Suffixes

- "-en" (suffix)
- It comes at the **end** of a word. يأتي في نهاية الكلمة.
- It means to make or to become. يعني أن يجعل شيئًا ما على حالة معينة أو أن يصبح شيئًا ما.

Word	-en (suffix)	
wide	widen	يوسِّع
dark	darken	يظلم
light	lighten	يضيء
short	shorten	يقصر

Example:

- They will **widen** the bridge next year.

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. Farmers usually work in the to grow crops.
 a) shop b) field c) zone d) goods
2. The company produces high-quality for sale.
 a) goods b) machine c) abroad d) changes
3. The government made many to improve transportation in the city.
 a) panels b) schools c) rivers d) facilities
4. I bought a new bag from the local
 a) shop b) high-quality c) produce d) machine
5. Engineers will the road to reduce traffic. SB
 a) large b) enlarge c) enlargen d) larger
6. The teacher wants to students to read more. SB
 a) courage b) encouraged c) encourage d) encouraging
7. Heavy rain can the color of the sand. SB
 a) dark b) darken c) darkness d) darked
8. They will the road next year. SB
 a) widen b) enwide c) wide d) wider
9. People plant trees to the soil. SB
 a) rich b) richness c) richer d) enrich

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

shop - machines - vegetables - school - facilities

In the city, there is a big factory that makes different goods for people. Workers use many ① to finish their tasks quickly. Near the factory, there is a small ② where people can buy fresh products like fruits and ③ The factory is in a special zone with good roads and modern ④ to help workers and visitors.



3 Circle the odd one out:

1. enlarge - enrich - enable - book
2. golden - wooden - widen - quickly
3. encourage - rain - enable - ensure
4. darken - lighten - deepen - school
5. enclose - endanger - enter - beauty

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. people - local shops - in - small - worked - **Many**.

.....

2. builds - government - roads - **The** - new - also.

.....

3. used to - **Egypt** - on - depend - farming - mostly.

.....

4. **Egyptians** - proud - are - their - country - of.

.....

5 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"Egypt Is Changing"

▶ **jobs - industries**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



northern coast

الساحل الشمالي



beach

شاطئ



university

جامعة



pharaohs

الفراعنة



the Mediterranean Sea

البحر الأبيض المتوسط



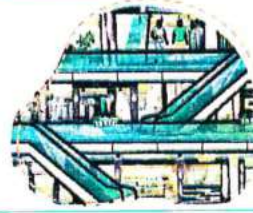
coastal cities

مدن ساحلية



walkway

ممشى / ممر للمشبي



shopping center

مركز تسوق

Places

أماكن

New Alamein City

مدينة العلمين الجديدة

Luxor Temple

معبد الأقصر

Alexandria Library

مكتبة الإسكندرية

Abu Simbel

أبو سمبل

Khan El Khalili

خان الخليلي

Siwa Oasis

واحة سيوة

The Citadel of Saladin

قلعة صلاح الدين

Luxor

الأقصر

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

luxury	رفاهية / فخامة	the god Amun	الإله آمون
palm tree	نخلة	hotel	فندق
spot	موقع / مكان مميز	blue waters	مياه زرقاء
innovation	ابتكار	vision	رؤية
feature	ميزة / خاصية	desert	صحراء
stone	حجر	statue	تمثال
hieroglyphics	الهيروغليفية (الكتابة المصرية القديمة)	columns	أعمدة
symbol	رمز	culture	ثقافة

Adjectives

صفات

golden	ذهبي	luxury	فخم / رفاهية
smart	ذكي / حديث	lively	حيوي / مليء بالحياة
peaceful	هادئ / مسالم	cultural	ثقافي

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

golden sandy beaches	شواطئ رملية ذهبية	designed to be a smart place	مُصممة لتكون مكانًا ذكيًا
a city of the future	مدينة المستقبل	enjoy peaceful beaches	يستمتع بالشواطئ الهادئة
more than just a tourist spot	أكثر من مجرد مكان سياحي	a new home for many Egyptians	موطن جديد لكثير من المصريين
turn the desert into a modern city	يحوّل الصحراء إلى مدينة حديثة	full of life	ملئية بالحياة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
design	يصمّم	designed	designed
combine	يجمع / يدمج	combined	combined
include	يضم / يحتوي	included	included
reflect	يعكس	reflected	reflected
turn	يحوّل / يغيّر	turned	turned
plan	يخطّط	planned	planned
honor	يكرّم / يشرف	honored	honored
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	imagined
remain	يبقى / يستمر	remained	remained

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
meet	يلتقي	met	met
know	يعرف	knew	known
lie	يقع / يوجد	lied	lied

Read and learn

New Alamein City مدينة العلمين الجديدة

New Alamein City is one of Egypt's most modern coastal cities. It lies on the beautiful northern coast, where the blue waters of the Mediterranean Sea meet golden sandy beaches. The city is designed to be a smart place that combines history, beauty, and modern life. Wide roads, green parks, and tall glass buildings make it look like a city of the future.



مدينة العلمين الجديدة هي واحدة من أكثر المدن الساحلية حداثة في مصر.

تقع على الساحل الشمالي الجميل، حيث تلتقي المياه الزرقاء للبحر الأبيض المتوسط بالشواطئ الرملية الذهبية. تم تصميم المدينة لتكون مكانًا ذكيًا يجمع بين التاريخ، الجمال، والحياة الحديثة. الطرق الواسعة، والحدائق الخضراء، والمباني الزجاجية الطويلة تجعلها تبدو كمدينة المستقبل.

Visitors can enjoy peaceful beaches, luxury hotels, and beautiful walkways filled with palm trees. The city also includes universities, shopping centers, and cultural areas that make it more than just a tourist spot; it's a new home for many Egyptians.

يمكن للزوار الاستمتاع بالشواطئ الهادئة، والفنادق الفاخرة، والممرات الجميلة المليئة بأشجار النخيل. تضم المدينة أيضًا جامعات، ومراكز تسوق، ومناطق ثقافية تجعلها أكثر من مجرد مكان سياحي؛ فهي موطن جديد لكثير من المصريين.

New Alamein reflects Egypt's vision for progress, showing how innovation and planning can turn the desert into a modern, lively city full of life.

تعكس مدينة العلمين الجديدة رؤية مصر للتقدم، وتُظهر كيف يمكن للابتكار والتخطيط أن يحوّل الصحراء إلى مدينة حديثة نابضة بالحياة.



Writing Notes:

How to write a descriptive paragraph:

كيف نكتب فقرة وصفية:

1 Start with where the place is.

ابدأ بوصف موقع المكان أولاً.

2 Describe what it looks like (colors, size, features).

صف شكل المكان (الألوان، الحجم، والميزات أو المظاهر).

3 Mention what people can do there.

اذكر ما يمكن للناس أن يفعلوه هناك (الأنشطة المتاحة).

4 End with your opinion or feeling about the place.

اختتم بذكر رأيك أو شعورك تجاه المكان.



Think and Create

A Flyer about a Famous Place in Egypt

Description:

Luxor Temple is a magnificent ancient complex in the city of Luxor. It was built to honor the god Amun and the great pharaohs of Egypt. The temple is known for its giant statues, tall stone columns, and beautiful hieroglyphics. Visitors can walk through its grand gates and imagine life in ancient Egypt. It remains one of the country's most remarkable symbols of history and culture.



معبد الأقصر هو مجمع أثري رائع في مدينة الأقصر. تم بناؤه لتكريم الإله آمون والفرعنة العظماء في مصر. يشتهر المعبد بتمثيله الضخمة وأعمدته الحجرية الطويلة والنقوش الهيروغليفية الجميلة. يمكن للزوار أن يسيروا عبر بواباته الكبيرة ويتخيلوا الحياة في مصر القديمة. ولا يزال يعتبر واحدًا من أبرز رموز التاريخ والثقافة في البلاد.

Design Your Own Flyer!

Task: Choose another famous place in Egypt and create a colorful, attractive flyer that encourages people to visit.

صمّم منشورك بنفسك! المهمة: اختر مكانًا مشهورًا آخر في مصر، ثم اصنع منشورًا (فلاير) ملونًا وجذابًا يشجع الناس على زيارته.

Choose one:

▶ Abu Simbel

▶ Khan El Khalili

▶ The Citadel of Saladin

▶ Alexandria Library

▶ Siwa Oasis

Exercises

on

Lessons

4
& 5

1

Choose the correct answer:

1. Many tourists enjoy walking on the near the beach.

a) walkway

b) pharaohs

c) building

d) desert

2. New Alamein City is one of Egypt's
 a) malls b) coastal cities c) universities d) pharaohs
3. New Alamein shows Egypt's vision for
 a) farming b) the past c) progress d) ruins
4. The city has hotels where visitors can stay comfortably.
 a) empty b) simple c) broken d) luxury
5. New Alamein has where people can buy many things.
 a) gates b) shopping centers c) statues d) deserts

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

center - beach - walkway - coastal cities - pharaohs

New Alamein City is a new and beautiful place on the northern coast near the Mediterranean Sea. It is one of Egypt's modern ① People can relax on the ② and walk on the long ③ The city has a university and a big shopping ④ It is modern but still remembers the history of the pharaohs.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Egypt is a country that connects the past with the future. New cities like New Alamein show modern life with wide roads, tall buildings, and clean beaches. People can study in universities and enjoy shopping centers there. On the other hand, ancient places like Luxor Temple remind us of Egypt's great history. The temple has giant statues and beautiful hieroglyphics made by the pharaohs. Together, new cities and ancient temples show Egypt's progress and strong culture.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. New cities like New Alamein show with wide roads.
 a) small life b) cold life c) modern life d) clean life

Unit 4

2. Luxor Temple reminds us of Egypt's great

- a) history b) weather c) sports d) music

3. Answer the following questions:

3. What do new cities like New Alamein show?
4. What can people do in new cities?
5. What features does Luxor Temple have?

4. Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. known - The temple - statues - its - giant - for - is.

2. lies - coast - northern - It - on - the

3. smart - city - designed - be - to - The - is

4. reflects - Egypt's - New Alamein - vision - progress - for.

5. Punctuate the following:

1. New alamein city is on the northern coast

2. Luxor temple is an ancient place in Egypt

6. Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"New Alamein City"

► progress - coastal

Review on Unit 4

Vocabulary

infrastructure	البنية التحتية	determination	العزيمة / الإصرار
highway	طريق سريع	innovation	ابتكار
extend	يُمدّ / يوسّع	goods	البضائع
transportation	وسائل النقل / المواصلات	improves	يُحسّن / يُطوّر
investment	استثمار	power supplies	إمدادات الطاقة
bridge	جسر / كوبري	tunnel	نفق
The New Administrative Capital	العاصمة الإدارية الجديدة	the Mediterranean Sea	البحر الأبيض المتوسط
textile	نسيج	manufacture	يصنع - إنتاج
steel industry	صناعة الفولاذ / الحديد	power source	مصدر الطاقة
industrial	صناعي	self-reliant	معتمد على الذات
Africa	أفريقيا	Middle East	الشرق الأوسط
fabrics	أقمشة	natural gas	الغاز الطبيعي
solar energy	الطاقة الشمسية	wind energy	طاقة الرياح
northern coast	الساحل الشمالي	coastal cities	مدن ساحلية
beach	شاطئ	economy	الاقتصاد
university	جامعة	walkway	ممشى/ممر للمشبي
pharaohs	الفراعنة	shopping center	مركز تسوق
place	مكان	history	تاريخ

Language in Use

Used to

used to + the base verb

- I **used to play** football.
- I **don't play** now.

Forming Questions

Did + subject + use to + the base verb?

▶ Did you use to play tennis?

Negative Sentences

(didn't use to) (لم أكن معتادا أن)

▶ I **didn't** use to be thin.

Pronunciation

1 The prefix "en-"

- It comes at the **beginning** of a word.

rich **enrich**

Example:

New roads **enrich** the country's development.

2 "-en" (suffix)

- It comes at the **end** of a word.
It means to make or to become.

wide **widen**

Example:

They will **widen** the bridge next year.

power supplies

nation

infrastructure

narrow

project

road

network

growth

machine

farming

future

high-quality

field

luxury

difficult

blue waters

place

facilities

product

start

خدمة

مهندس

تطوير / تنمية

تقدم

الحياة اليومية

بطيء

قرية

معتمد على الذات

منطقة / نطاق

يستخدم

تغييرات

فخور

مصنع

زجاج

واسع

فندق

يربط

مركز تسوق

مبدع

طاقة نظيفة

Writing Skills

Modern engineering and new roads

Modern engineering has helped our country grow quickly. Engineers design wide new roads that connect cities and villages. These roads make travel easier and faster. They also support development by allowing goods and services to move safely. With better roads, people can visit new places and work in different areas.

The textile industry

The textile industry is important in many countries. It produces different fabrics in large factories. Skilled workers use modern machines to spin and weave threads. The fabrics are then dyed and prepared for clothing. This industry supports development by creating jobs and helping local markets grow for people everywhere today.

Egypt is Changing

Egypt is changing quickly today. New industries are being built in many cities, and they provide jobs for thousands of people. Factories produce goods that we used to import from other countries. These changes help the economy grow stronger. People have more opportunities to learn, work, and improve their lives.

New Alamein City

New Alamein City is a modern city by the sea. It shows progress and development in Egypt. The city has tall buildings, clean streets, and beautiful beaches. People can live, work, and relax there. It offers new opportunities for education, business, and tourism and recreation for all residents and visitors.

Egypt on the move

Egypt is moving forward with great progress every day. New roads, bridges, and cities are being built to improve life for everyone. Industries are growing, and many new jobs are helping people support their families. Clean energy from the sun and wind is shaping a better future. Egypt is working with determination, and its people are proud of how far the country has come.



Search

From : salma@gmail.com
To : ahmed@gmail.com
Subject : Exciting Changes in Egypt

Hi Ahmed,

I hope you are well. Egypt has changed a lot! New factories, highways, and modern cities like New Alamein make life easier. Clean energy and new industries are helping people find jobs. Our country is becoming stronger and more self-reliant every day.

Your friend,
Salma



Test 9 on Unit 4

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

Total

60

1

Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

(10Ms)

centers - roads - parks - fruits - Amazing! - modern city

Sara : Have you visited New Alamein City before?

Omar : Not yet, but I know it is a ① in the northern coast.

Sara : What is special about it?

Omar : It has wide ②, tall buildings, green ③, and beautiful beaches.

Sara : So people can live and work there too?

Omar : Yes, it has universities, shopping ④ and homes.

Sara : ⑤ It must look very new and clean.

2

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

(10Ms)

1. We (use) eat vegetables every day.

2. Did you use to (had) a bike when you were a child?

3. He (use to like) milk, but now he drinks juice.

4. She (uses to going) to school by bus.

5. My sister (using to) play with dolls when she was little.

3

Choose the correct answer:

(10Ms)

1. Factories (start - manufacture - travel) many products such as clothes and furniture.

2. Egypt is building (beaches - juice - facilities) to support industry and development.

3. Egypt is becoming more (**self-reliant** - narrow - crowded) because it produces its own goods.
4. There is a beautiful (**workshop** - tunnel - walkway) by the sea where people can walk.
5. Factories produce many (**beaches** - goods - tunnels) such as clothes, furniture, and tools.
6. People (**used to** - use to - using to) depend mainly on farming in the past.
7. (**Did** - Does - Do) Egyptians use to travel by new highways in the past?
8. Children (**use to** - did use to - used to) play outside more in the past.
9. He (**used to** - does use to - is used to) live in a busy city, but now he lives in a quiet village.
10. We (**used too** - use to - used to) watch black and white TV when we were young.

4 Read and circle the odd one out, and replace it with a correct one: (10Ms)

1. power supplies - solar energy - textbooks - wind energy
2. fabrics - highway - bridge - tunnel
3. New Alamein City - farming - Luxor Temple - Abu Simbel
4. steel industry - beach - textile industry - factories
5. wide - tall - crowded - golden

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10Ms)

Egypt is becoming one of the strongest industrial countries in Africa and the Middle East. In the past, people used to depend on farming, and there were few factories. Today, Egypt has many industries such as textile, food, and steel. These industries produce clothes, juice, and materials for building bridges and houses. New power sources like solar and wind energy help create clean electricity. As more factories open, more people work and support the economy. Egyptians are proud of their country's progress and development.

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. In the past, most people in Egypt depended on farming. ()
2. Egypt has industries like textile, food, and steel today. ()
3. Egyptians are unhappy with their country's progress and development. ()

B Choose the correct answer:

4. New power sources like solar and wind energy help create clean (electricity - toys - clothes).
5. As more factories open, more people (stop studying - lose jobs - find work).

6 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements: (10Ms)

"Egypt on the move"



▶ future - progress

Handwriting practice area with dashed lines for writing.

Test 10 on Unit 4

1

Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:



Total

30

(Marks 2)

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1. New Alamein City is located on Egypt's northern coast. (.....)
2. The city has narrow roads and no parks. (.....)
3. Visitors enjoy quiet beaches and luxury hotels in New Alamein. (.....)
4. Many Egyptians live in New Alamein City, not only tourists. (.....)

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(2Ms)

1. Sara showed great even when the lessons were difficult.
a) determination b) surprise c) laughter d) fear
2. The farmer works in the every morning.
a) classroom b) bridge c) field d) tunnel
3. Students have computers in schools in the past.
a) used to b) didn't use to c) did use to d) uses to
4. Did Egyptians work in small local jobs before?
a) used to b) use to c) using to d) uses to

3

Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

factories - Egyptians - proud - industries - fields

Egypt used to depend mainly on farming in the past. People worked in ① or small local shops. There were few ② and machines were not common. Today, Egypt has developed new ③ such as textile and steel. Engineers use solar and wind energy to create clean power. New roads and bridges support progress, and Egyptians feel ④ of their growing, strong nation.

Term 2

4

Read the text and answer the questions:

(7Ms)

Egypt has started many new infrastructure projects, including highways, bridges, tunnels, and power supplies, to improve daily life and connect the country. Skilled engineers are building modern roads that make travel faster and transport goods more easily. Cities like New Alamein show modern development with wide roads, parks, hotels, and shopping centers, while Luxor Temple reflects Egypt's ancient history with giant statues and stone columns. Together, these projects and landmarks show Egypt's progress, innovation, and pride in its past and future.

A

Choose the correct answer:

- Egypt has started many new projects.
a) infrastructure b) holiday c) farming d) clothing
- Cities like New Alamein show modern development with roads, green parks, hotels, and shopping centers.
a) narrow b) wide c) crowded d) old

B

Answer the following questions:

- What types of infrastructure projects has Egypt started?
▶
- How do modern roads and projects help the country today?
▶
- What do New Alamein and Luxor Temple show about Egypt?
▶

5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets (4Ms)

- People (did uses to) depend on farming in the past.
- My grandparents used to (lives) in a small village when they were young.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2Ms)

1. life - our - highways - modern - daily - We - use - to - improve.

2. future - prepared - for - Egypt - is - the.

7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. ziad showed old maps of rivers mountains and villages.

- 2.** Can you give me this bag please

8 Write an email of SIXTY (60) words using the words below: (7Ms)

Write an email to your friend Ahmed telling him about the changes that have happened in Egypt. Your mail is salma@gmail.com, and your friend's email is ahmed@gmail.com:

[illegible]



Safe and Smart Transportation for Egypt's Future

وسائل نقل آمنة وذكية لمستقبل مصر

Unit 5

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit, students will be able to:



Listening

- Understand the main idea of short-spoken texts about transportation and travel.
- Recognize key transportation vocabulary in listening activities.
- Follow short spoken instructions related to travel, safety, and directions.
- Identify specific details such as payment methods, rules, or announcements in listening tasks.



Speaking

- Use transportation vocabulary in short role-plays and discussions.
- Ask and answer questions about new and modern transportation systems.
- Talk about future transportation ideas and inventions.
- Use the First Conditional correctly to discuss possible future situations.



Reading

- Identify main ideas and supporting details in short reading texts about transportation in Egypt and around the world.
- Recognize new transportation related vocabulary in context.
- Make simple inferences about how transportation can change people's lives in the future.



Writing

- Write an email suggesting or describing future transportation solutions.
- Write First Conditional sentences about transportation and the environment.
- Create a short magazine article or brochure describing future transportation ideas.

Lesson 1

Next Stop, Giza

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



announcement

إعلان



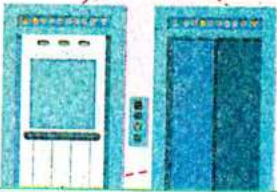
passengers

ركاب/مسافرون



ticket machine

آلة تذاكر



elevator

مصعد



digital screen

شاشة ذكية



escalator

سلم متحرك



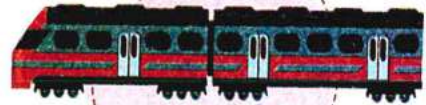
pay by card

الدفع بالبطاقة



smart doors

أبواب ذكية



metro

مترو - قطار الأنفاق

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

staircase

سُلَّم / دَرَج

machine

آلة / ماكينة

train

قطار

electric

كهربائي

platform

منصة

stop (n)

محطة

electricity

كهرباء

LED lights

أضواء ليد (LED)

environment	بيئة	the Green Line	الخط الأخضر
automatically	آليًا / تلقائيًا	cash	نقدًا
access	وصول / دخول	riding	الركوب
information	معلومات	device	جهاز
building	مبنى	shopping center	مركز تسوق
rule	قاعدة / قانون	route	مسار / خط السير
weather	الطقس	coins	عملات معدنية
a paper pass	بطاقة مرور ورقية	online	عبر الإنترنت

Adjectives

صفات

fast	سريع	clean	نظيف
big	كبير الحجم	clear	واضح
smart	ذكي	easy	سهل
better	أفضل	green	أخضر
digital	رقمي	new	جديد

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

the next stop	المحطة التالية	faster and cleaner than before	أسرع وأنظف من قبل
save electricity	توفير الكهرباء	better for the environment	أفضل للبيئة
stand back from the doors	ابتعد عن الأبواب	for easy access	لسهولة الوصول

Definitions تعريفات

ticket machine	A machine where you buy tickets.
announcement	Speaking to give information to many people.
digital screen	An electric device for showing words or pictures.
elevator	A moving platform that goes up or down in a building
escalator	A moving staircase.

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
move	يتحرك	moved	moved
welcome	يُرحِّب	welcomed	welcomed
save	يحفظ - ينقذ	saved	saved
close	يغلق	closed	closed

Irregular verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
ride	يركب	rode	ridden
buy	يشترى	bought	bought
give	يعطي	gave	given
show	يُظهر	showed	shown
pay	يدفع	paid	paid
stand	يقف	stood	stood
speak	يتكلم	spoke	spoken
sell	يبيع	sold	sold



Listen and learn



Next Stop, Giza

المحطة التالية، الجيزة



"Good morning, passengers. Welcome to the Cairo **Metro**. This is Line 3, the Green Line. The next **stop** is **Giza Station**.

صباح الخير أيها الركاب. مرحبًا بكم في مترو القاهرة. هذا هو الخط الثالث، الخط الأخضر. المحطة التالية هي محطة الجيزة.

"The Giza **Metro** is now **faster** and **cleaner** than before. New trains have **smart doors** that open and close automatically. Inside the **train**, there are big **digital screens**. They show the next station and the time. You can also hear clear **announcements** in Arabic and English."

مترو الجيزة الآن أصبح أسرع وأنظف من ذي قبل. القطارات الجديدة مزودة بأبواب ذكية تُفتح وتُغلق تلقائيًا. داخل القطار توجد شاشات رقمية كبيرة تُظهر المحطة التالية والوقت. يمكنك أيضًا سماع إعلانات واضحة باللغة العربية والإنجليزية.

"At **Giza Station**, there are new **ticket machines**. You can **pay by card**, a phone, or cash. There are also **elevators** and **escalators** for easy access."

في محطة الجيزة، توجد ماكينات تذاكر جديدة. يمكنك الدفع بالبطاقة أو الهاتف أو نقدًا. كما توجد مصاعد وسلالم متحركة لتسهيل الوصول.

"The **metro** uses smart **electricity**. The lights are **LED** and the trains save electricity when they stop. This makes the metro better for the **environment**."

"المترو يستخدم الكهرباء الذكية. الأضواء ليد، والقطارات توفر الكهرباء عندما تتوقف. هذا يجعل المترو أفضل للبيئة."

"Please stand back from the **doors**. The next **stop** is Giza. Thank you for riding with us."

يرجى الابتعاد عن الأبواب. المحطة التالية هي الجيزة. شكرًا لاستخدامكم المترو.



Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. The announcement is for Line 3. (.....)
2. The metro is slower than before. (.....)
3. Passengers can pay by card, phone, or cash. (.....)
4. The trains save electricity when they stop. (.....)
5. The announcements are only in English. (.....)

Exercises on Lesson 1

1 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

doors - announcement - electricity - passengers - screens

Every day, thousands of passengers use the new Cairo Metro. It is faster and cleaner than before. Inside the train, there are big digital ① that show the next station and the time. You can hear a clear ② in Arabic and English. The smart ③ open and close automatically. The metro saves ④ when it stops to help the environment.

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Every day, thousands of use the new Cairo Metro.
a) doors b) passengers c) ticket machines d) escalators
2. Inside the train, there is a big that shows the next station.
a) environment b) platform
c) staircase d) digital screen
3. At Giza Station, you can pay for your ticket at the
a) metro b) elevator
c) ticket machine d) Green Line
4. The metro saves when it stops to help the environment.
a) escalator b) electricity c) staircase d) cash

2. are - digital - screens - **There** - big - train - inside - the.

▶

3. card, - pay - phone, - or cash - by - can - **You**.

▶

4. saves - metro - **The** - when - electricity - stops - it.

▶

5. clear announcements - hear - **You** - can - English - and - in Arabic.

▶

5 Punctuate the following:

1. what do the digital screens show

▶

2. have you ever ridden on the metro before

▶

3. please, stand back from the doors

▶

4. At giza station, there are elevators and escalators

▶

6 Write a paragraph of **SIXTY (60)** words using the words below:

"The New Cairo Metro"

▶ **What new technology does it have?**

▶ **How do passengers pay?**

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية

**monorail**

قطار أحادي السكة

**electric bus**

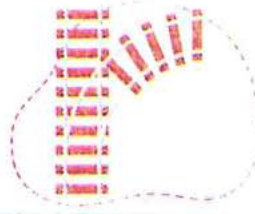
حافلة كهربائية

**transportation**

وسائل النقل

**station**

محطة

**track**

مسار (سكة القطار)

**old bus**

أتوبيس قديم

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

smoke

دخان

future

مستقبل

the ground

الأرض

system

نظام

playground

ساحة اللعب

petrol

بنزين

way

طريقة

seats

مقاعد / كراسي

Adjectives

صفات

safe

آمن

important

مهم

bright

ساطع

single

واحد

automatic

آلي

modern

حديث

Expressions and Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر

above the ground	فوق الأرض	follow the rules	يتبع القواعد
runs on electricity	يعمل بالكهرباء	at each station	في كل محطة
runs on a single track	يسير على مسار واحد	move smartly into the future	يتقدم بذكاء نحو المستقبل
stay safe	يبقى آمناً	stand or sit properly	يقف أو يجلس بطريقة صحيحة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present	Past	PP
change	changed	changed
continue	continued	continued
connect	connected	connected
travel	traveled	traveled
block	blocked	blocked
stay	stayed	stayed
follow	followed	followed
allow	allowed	allowed

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present	Past	PP
grow	grew	grown
become	became	become
run	ran	run
find	found	found
sit	sat	sat

Egypt's New Monorail and Electric Buses

المونوريل الجديد والحافلات الكهربائية في مصر



Egypt is changing the way people travel. If these new transportation systems continue to grow in Cairo and Giza, the cities **will become** faster, cleaner, and smarter.

مصر تُغيّر طريقة تنقّل الناس. إذا استمرت هذه الأنظمة الجديدة في التطوّر في القاهرة والجيزة، ستصبح المدن أسرع وأنظف وأكثر ذكاءً.

One exciting project is the monorail, a train that runs on a single track above the ground. **It will connect** important places quickly. At each station, passengers **will find** ticket machines, digital screens, and announcements. Some stations also have elevators and escalators, so people **will travel** more easily.

أحد المشاريع المميزة هو القطار الأحادي "المونوريل"، وهو قطار يسير على مسار واحد فوق الأرض. سيربط الأماكن المهمة بسرعة. في كل محطة، سيجد الركاب ماكينات تذاكر وشاشات رقمية وإعلانات صوتية. بعض المحطات تحتوي أيضًا على مصاد ووسائل متحركة، لذلك سيتنقل الناس بسهولة أكبر.

Passengers must buy a ticket and listen to announcements. They mustn't block the smart doors. The electric bus **will help** the environment because it runs on electricity and makes no smoke. Passengers **will be able to pay** by card or phone. The bus has smart doors and bright LED lights.

يجب على الركاب شراء تذكرة والاستماع إلى الإعلانات. لا يجب أن يعيقوا الأبواب الذكية. الحافلة الكهربائية ستساعد البيئة لأنها تعمل بالكهرباء ولا تُنتج أي دخان. سيتمكن الركاب من الدفع بالبطاقة أو الهاتف. تحتوي الحافلة على أبواب ذكية وأضواء ليد ساطعة.

People **will stay safe if they stand or sit** properly, but they **won't follow** the rules **if they eat or drink** on the bus.

سيظلّ الناس في أمان إذا وقفوا أو جلسوا بطريقة صحيحة، لكنهم لن يتبعوا القواعد إذا أكلوا أو شربوا داخل الحافلة.

With the monorail and electric buses, Egypt **will move** smartly into the future.

بفضل المونوريل والحافلات الكهربائية، ستتقدّم مصر بذكاء نحو المستقبل.

Read and write T (True) or F (False):



Student's Book

1. If Egypt keeps improving transportation, Cairo and Giza will become smarter cities. (.....)
2. Passengers will find ticket machines and digital screens at the stations. (.....)
3. The electric bus makes a lot of smoke. (.....)
4. Eating or drinking on the bus will be allowed. (.....)
5. The new transportation systems will help the environment. (.....)

Language In Use



First Conditional (Future Possibilities)

الحالة الأولى (احتمالات في المستقبل)



Study this example situation:

▶ If you **study** hard, you **will pass** the exam.

إذا درستَ بجدّ، سوف تنجح في الامتحان.



▶ We use the First Conditional to talk about possible situations in the future.

نستخدم الحالة الأولى للتحدث عن مواقف أو أحداث ممكنة في المستقبل.

If + present simple, will + base verb

If + مضارع بسيط , will + أصل الفعل

Examples:

- ▶ If it **rains** tomorrow, we **will stay** at home.
لو تمطر غداً، سنبقى في المنزل.
- ▶ If she **comes** late, she **will miss** the bus.
لو تأتي متأخرة، ستفوتها الحافلة.
- ▶ If they **win** the game, they **will be** very happy.
لو يفوزون بالمباراة، سيكونون سعداء جداً.

Match column A with column B to form a correct sentence:



Student's book

'A'

1. If you stand behind the yellow line, ...
2. If people take the monorail, ..
3. If you forget your card, ...
4. If buses are electric, ...

'B'

- a) you will buy a ticket from the machine.
- b) you will be safe.
- d) they will travel more quickly.
- e) the city will be cleaner.

Exercises on Lesson 2



Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The monorail runs on one
a) road b) airport c) bridge d) track
2. The electric bus is better for the environment because it makes no
a) smoke b) noise c) water d) heat
3. All types of transportation help people easily.
a) eat b) travel c) sleep d) read

4. We waited at the bus for an hour.
 a) road b) track c) station d) car
5. If it tomorrow, we will stay at home.
 a) rains b) rained c) raining d) rain
6. She will pass the exam if she hard.
 a) study b) studied c) studies d) studying
7. If we now, we won't be late.
 a) leave b) left c) leaving d) leaves
8. If it cold, we will wear our jackets.
 a) being b) was c) were d) is

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

monorail - electricity - car - Passengers - stations

Egypt is improving its transportation system. Egypt's new ① system uses smart ② with ticket machines and digital screens. It runs on ③, which helps make the environment cleaner. ④ will travel quickly and safely across the city. The project also reduces traffic congestion and air pollution. Soon, more lines will connect different neighborhoods, making daily commuting easier for everyone.

3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. arrive - you - will - faster - If - take - the monorail, - you.

▶

2. electric - runs - The - on - bus - electricity.

▶

3. Egypt - changing - is - travel - the - people - the - way.

▶

Unit 5

4. future - **Egypt** - move - smartly - into - will.

5. elevators - **Some** - have - stations - and - escalators.

4

Fill in the blanks with the correct form of the verb:



Student's
Book

1. If we (**use**) the electric bus, the air (**be**) cleaner.

2. If the passenger (**listen**) to the announcement, he
(**know**) the next stop.

3. If passengers (**block**) the smart doors, the train
(**not start**).

4. If Egypt (**build**) more monorails, people (**travel**) faster.

5. If your dad (**pay**) by card, he (**save**) time.

5

Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"Smart Transportation in Egypt"



► **cleaner – electricity**

Handwriting practice area for the paragraph "Smart Transportation in Egypt". The area contains horizontal lines for writing.

Lessons 3

Cleaner Transportation, Cleaner Planet

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



eco-friendly

صديق للبيئة



self-driving

قيادة ذاتية



renewable energy

طاقة متجددة



air pollution

تلوث الهواء



vehicle

مركبة



planet

كوكب

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

fuel	وقود	noise	ضوضاء
road	طريق	accidents	حوادث
diesel	ديزل (وقود / سولار)	generations	أجيال
red lights	إشارات المرور الحمراء	fresh	نقي / منعش
source	مصدر	natural	طبيعي
human	إنسان	wind power	الطاقة الشمسية
wind power	طاقة الرياح	Earth	الأرض

Expressions and Prepositions

تعبيرات وحروف جر

never runs out

لا تنفذ أبدا

stop at red lights

توقف عند إشارات المرور الحمراء

natural sources

مصادر طبيعية

for future generations

للأجيال القادمة

in smarter and cleaner ways

بطرق أذكى وأنظف

without a driver

بدون سائق

becoming eco-friendly

يصبح صديقاً للبيئة

more safely and easily

بأمان وسهولة أكثر

people on foot

المشاة

all the time

طوال الوقت

make less noise

يُصدر ضوضاء أقل

slow down

يُبطئ / يخفف السرعة

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
avoid	يتجنب	avoided	avoided
protect	يحمي	protected	protected
reduce	يقلل	reduced	reduced
harm	يُضر	harmed	harmed
slow	يُبطئ	slowed	slowed
power	يُشغّل / يزود بالطاقة	powered	powered

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
mean	يعني	meant	meant
choose	يختار	chose	chosen

Read and learn



In the future, people will travel in smarter and cleaner ways. Many new vehicles are becoming **eco-friendly**, which means they do not harm the environment.

في المستقبل، سيسافر الناس بطرق أكثر ذكاءً ونظافة. العديد من المركبات الجديدة أصبحت صديقة للبيئة، أي أنها لا تسبب ضررًا للبيئة.

For example, electric buses and trains use less fuel and make less noise. This helps reduce **pollution** in cities and keeps the air fresh for everyone.

على سبيل المثال، تستخدم الحافلات والقطارات الكهربائية وقودًا أقل وتصدر ضوضاء أقل. وهذا يساعد على تقليل التلوث في المدن ويحافظ على الهواء نقيًا للجميع.

Some cars today are even **self-driving**. These cars use cameras and computers to move safely on the road without a driver. They can stop at red lights, slow down for people on foot, and avoid accidents. In the future, **self-driving** cars may help people travel more safely and easily. حتى أن بعض السيارات اليوم ذاتية القيادة. وهذه السيارات تستخدم الكاميرات وأجهزة الكمبيوتر لتتحرك بأمان على الطريق بدون سائق.

يمكن لهذه السيارات أن تتوقف عند إشارات المرور الحمراء، وتبطئ سرعتها عندما يمر المشاة، وأيضًا تتجنب الحوادث. في المستقبل، قد تساعد السيارات ذاتية القيادة الناس على السفر بطريقة أكثر أمانًا وسهولة.

Many countries are also using **renewable energy** to power their transportation. **Renewable energy** comes from natural sources like the sun, wind, and water. It never runs out and is better for our planet than petrol or diesel.

العديد من الدول تستخدم أيضًا الطاقة المتجددة لتشغيل وسائل النقل الخاصة بها. والطاقة المتجددة تأتي من مصادر طبيعية مثل الشمس والرياح والماء، هذه الطاقة لا تنفذ أبدًا، وهي أفضل لكوكبنا من البنزين أو الديزل.

If everyone chooses **eco-friendly** transportation and uses **renewable energy**, the world will become a cleaner and safer place. Together, we can help reduce **pollution** and protect Earth for future generations.

إذا اختار الجميع وسائل النقل الصديقة للبيئة واستخدموا الطاقة المتجددة، سيصبح العالم مكانًا أنظف وأكثر أمانًا. معًا، يمكننا المساعدة في تقليل التلوث وحماية الأرض للأجيال القادمة.

Read and write (T) true or F (False):



1. Self-driving cars need a person to control them all the time. ()
2. Renewable energy can run out easily. ()
3. Eco-friendly transport helps protect the environment. ()
4. Using renewable energy can help reduce pollution. ()
5. Self-driving cars use cameras and computers to move safely. ()

Pronunciation



Triphthongs

- Triphthong is a vowel sound that combines three vowel sounds together in one syllable.

هو صوت حرف علة يجمع بين ثلاثة أصوات حروف علة معًا في مقطع لفظي واحد.

① ow-er /aʊə/

Examples:

▶ hour ساعة

▶ our ملكنا

▶ flower وردة

- Together it sounds like: **ow-er**

- Say hour: start with “**ow**,” then glide to “**er**.”

عند نطق هذه الكلمات تصدر صوت مثل: **ow-er**

قل كلمة **hour**: ابدأ بصوت “**ow**” ثم انتقل إلى “**er**.”

② ay-er /eɪə-/

Examples:

▶ layer طبقة

▶ player لاعب

▶ mayor عمدة

▶ Together it sounds like: **ay-er**▶ Say player: it begins with "**play**" and ends with "**er**."عند نطق هذه الكلمات تصدر صوت مثل : **ay-er**قل **player**: يبدأ بـ "**play**" وينتهي بـ "**er**."

Cross out the word that doesn't have the same sound:



Student's Book

1. power - hour - shower - paper

2. layer - player - tiger - slayer

3. tower - teacher - flower - sour

Exercises on Lesson 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. Cars that use petrol and diesel are for the environment than electric ones.

- a) better b) worse c) cleaner d) smarter

2. Eco-friendly transportation means

- a) smart vehicles b) self-driving vehicles
c) flying vehicles d) vehicles that use renewable energy

3. We should pollution to protect the Earth.

- a) keep b) reduce c) support d) have

4. Renewable energies are better for the environment because

- a) they save money b) they are available
c) they nearly never end d) they don't use petrol or diesel

5. Pollution is for our health.

- a) good b) bad c) noisy d) supporting

6. Eco-friendly transport helps protect the

- a) fuel b) money
c) environment d) people from accidents

7. Self-driving cars could be than normal ones.
 a) harmful b) peaceful c) safer d) harder
8. Factories and cars can cause a lot of in big cities.
 a) planet b) renewable energy
 c) air pollution d) self-driving

2 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

fuel - cleaner - energy - reduce - Pollution

In our world, pollution is a real threat. ① is very harmful to the environment and to all living things. We should all work together to ② pollution and protect the Earth. Using renewable ③ instead of petrol or diesel will help for sure. We can also use eco-friendly machines and public electric vehicles for transport to make our planet ④ and safer.

3 Read the text and answer the questions:

Using eco-friendly transportation is important for protecting our planet. Public transport is one of the best ways to protect the planet. When people use buses, trains, or trams instead of private cars, fewer vehicles are on the road. This means less smoke and cleaner air. Governments are investing in modern electric public transport to make it more comfortable. Good public transport helps cities grow while keeping the environment safe. Everyone can help by choosing buses or trains over private cars.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The underlined word "it" refers to
 a) the country b) the government
 c) the modern d) the electric vehicles

2. Using public transportation is better for the planet because
- a) it saves money
 - b) it doesn't use fuel
 - c) it has more people in fewer vehicles
 - d) it has smart doors

B Answer the following questions:

3. What is the main idea of the text?
4. Why should people use public transport instead of private cars?
5. Why is car smoke harmful?

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. in - smarter - in - will - **People** - travel - the future - ways.

2. eco-friendly - becoming - are - **Many** - vehicles - new.

3. cars - today - even - **Some** - are - self-driving.

4. from - natural - **Renewable** - comes - energy - sources.

5 Punctuate the following:

1. some cars today are even self-driving

2. did the player score a goal

6 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

"Safe Transport"

pollution - environment

Lessons 4-5 Smart and Green Transportation Project

Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية



underground electric train

قطار كهربائي تحت الأرض



technology

تكنولوجيا



seat belt

حزام الأمان



brochure

كُتَيْب

Extra Vocabulary

كلمات إضافية

minutes

دقائق

vision

رؤية

signs

علامات

street

شارع

line

خط / طابور

positive

إيجابي

idea

فكرة

traveler

مسافر

quiet

هادئ

comfortable

مريح

Expressions and Prepositions

تعابير وحروف جر

pay for tickets	يدفع لشراء التذاكر	excited about....	متحمس لـ
wait in line	ينتظر في الصف	best wishes.	مع أطيب الأمنيات.
I hope you're doing well.	أتمنى أن تكون بخير.	in the future	في المستقبل

Conjugation of verbs

Regular verbs

أفعال منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
imagine	يتخيل	imagined	imagined
carry	يحمل	carried	carried
wait	ينتظر	waited	waited
crowd	يكتظ / يزدحم	crowded	crowded
hope	يأمل / يرجو	hoped	hoped
create	يبتكر / ينشئ	created	created

Irregular verbs

أفعال غير منتظمة

Present		Past	PP
build	يبني	built	built
tell	يخبر / يقول	told	told
wear	يرتدي	wore	worn



Read and learn



To: friend@example.com

Subject: My Vision for Egypt's Future Transport ← **Clear Subject**

Dear Nada, ← **Greeting**

How are you? I hope you're doing well. ← **Friendly Opening**

I want to tell you about my idea for Egypt's future transportation.

← **Topic Introduction**

In the future, I imagine Egypt will have faster, cleaner, and smarter ways to travel. ← **Main Idea**

"There will be underground electric trains that connect cities in just minutes and self-driving buses that carry passengers safely and comfortably".

"These vehicles will use renewable energy, so the air will be cleaner and the streets quieter, with much less pollution".

"Technology will also make travel easier".

"Passengers will pay for tickets using smart cards or mobile apps". ← **Details**

"The stations will have digital signs in both English and Arabic to help travelers.

People must wait in line, mustn't block the doors, and must wear seat belts in cars".

"If Egypt builds more eco-friendly transportation, the streets will be less crowded and the environment will be better for everyone".

I'm really excited about this smart and green future!

← **Personal Opinion**

Best wishes, ← **Closing**

Dina ← **Signature**



إلى: friend@example.com

الموضوع: رؤيتي لمستقبل وسائل النقل في مصر ————— عنوان واضح

عزيرتي ندى، ————— تحية

كيف حالك؟ أمل أن تكوني بخير. ————— افتتاحية ودية

أريد أن أخبرك عن فكرتي حول مستقبل وسائل النقل في مصر. ————— مقدمة الموضوع
في المستقبل، أتخيل أن مصر سيكون لديها طرق أسرع وأنظف وأكثر ذكاءً للسفر.

الفكرة الرئيسية

سيكون هناك قطارات كهربائية تحت الأرض تربط المدن في بضع دقائق، وحافلات ذاتية القيادة تنقل الركاب بأمان وراحة.

ستستخدم هذه المركبات الطاقة المتجددة، لذلك سيكون الهواء أنظف، والشوارع أكثر هدوءًا مع تلوث أقل بكثير.

وستجعل التكنولوجيا السفر أسهل أيضًا.

سيدفع الركاب ثمن التذاكر باستخدام البطاقات الذكية أو تطبيقات الهاتف المحمول.

تفاصيل

وستحتوي المحطات على لافتات رقمية باللغتين الإنجليزية والعربية لمساعدة المسافرين. ويجب على الناس الانتظار في طابور، وألا يغلقوا الأبواب، وأن يرتدوا أحزمة الأمان في السيارات. إذا قامت مصر ببناء المزيد من وسائل النقل الصديقة للبيئة، فستكون الشوارع أقل ازدحامًا، وسيصبح الجو أنظف والبيئة أفضل للجميع.

أنا متحمسة جدًا لهذا المستقبل الذكي والأخضر! (أخضر = طبيعي أو صديق للبيئة) ————— رأي

شخصي

مع أطيب التمنيات، ————— إنهاء الموضوع

دينا ————— التوقيع



Tips for Writing an Email نصائح لكتابة بريد إلكتروني

1) Clear Subject: موضوع واضح:

The subject line tells the reader what the email is about.

It should be short, clear, and informative.

عنوان البريد الإلكتروني يُخبر القارئ عن مضمون الرسالة. يجب أن يكون قصيرًا وواضحًا ومُعبرًا.

Example: My Vision for Egypt's Future Transport

2 Greeting: التحية

Start your email by addressing the person politely.

Use "Dear (Name)," for formal or friendly emails.

ابدأ بريدك الإلكتروني بمخاطبة الشخص بطريقة مهذبة.

استخدم "عزيزي/عزيزتي (الاسم)" للبريد الرسمي أو الودي.

► **Example:** Dear Nada

3 Friendly Opening: البداية الودية

Begin with a sentence that shows you care about the reader.

ابدأ بجملة تُظهر اهتمامك بالقارئ.

► **Example:** How are you? I hope you're doing well.

4 Topic Introduction: مقدمة الموضوع

Introduce the main topic you want to write about.

قدّم الموضوع الرئيسي الذي تريد الكتابة عنه.

► **Example:** I want to tell you about my idea for Egypt's future transportation.

5 Main Idea: الفكرة الرئيسية

Share your main thoughts or the most important information. Keep it clear and focused.

شارك أفكارك الأساسية أو أهم المعلومات. اجعلها واضحة ومركزة.

► **Example:** In the future, I imagine Egypt will have faster, cleaner, and smarter ways to travel.

6 Details: التفاصيل

Give examples, explanations, or supporting information about your main idea.

قدّم أمثلة أو شروحات أو معلومات داعمة للفكرة الرئيسية.

► **Example:** There will be underground electric trains and self-driving buses. Passengers will pay using smart cards or mobile apps.

7 Personal Opinion: الرأي الشخصي

Share how you feel or what you think about the topic.

شارك شعورك أو رأيك حول الموضوع.

► **Example:** I'm really excited about this smart and green future!

8 Closing: الخاتمة

End your email politely and positively.

اختتم بريدك الإلكتروني بطريقة مهذبة وإيجابية.

► **Example:** Best wishes,

9 Signature: التوقيع

Write your name at the end to show who sent the email.

اكتب اسمك في النهاية لتوضيح من أرسل البريد الإلكتروني.

► **Example:** Dina

Write an email to your friend describing your vision for Egypt's future transport. Use the model email and checklist to help you:



Student's Book

To :

Subject : Egypt's Future Transport

Dear :

How are you? I hope you're doing well. I want to tell you about my idea for Egypt's future transportation.

In the future, I imagine Egypt will have

These new systems will be

They will help people travel

Technology will also make travel easier. Passengers will

.....

People must and mustn't

.....

If Egypt builds more eco-friendly transport,

I'm really excited about this future!

Best wishes,

.....

Project: Think and Create

Transportation Magazine "Future Egypt"

Create a brochure about transportation in the year 2050. Imagine what travel in Egypt will look like in the future, and present your ideas in a creative way. أنشئ كتيبًا عن وسائل النقل في عام 2050. تخيل كيف سيكون السفر في مصر في المستقبل، واعرّض أفكارك بطريقة إبداعية.

Future Egypt 2050

By: [Your Name]



New Vehicles of 2050 مركبات جديدة لعام 2050

1 The Solar Sky Glider الطائرة الشراعية الشمسية

A light flying plane that uses 100% solar energy. It can take you from Cairo to Alexandria in only 20 minutes!

طائرة خفيفة الوزن تعمل بالطاقة الشمسية بنسبة 100%. يمكنها أن تنقلك من القاهرة إلى الإسكندرية في 20 دقيقة فقط!

Features: الميزات

No fuel needed لا تحتاج إلى وقود

Very fast سريعة جدا

Auto-pilot system نظام الطيار الآلي



2 The Nile Hydro Rail السكة الحديد النيلية

A fast train that glides on water, using magnetic tracks installed along the Nile. It floats above the water surface and produces zero pollution.

قطار سريع ينساب على الماء، باستخدام مسارات مغناطيسية مثبتة على طول نهر النيل. يطفو فوق سطح الماء، ولا يُصدر أي تلوث.



Features:

Runs on hydrogen power
Connects Upper & Lower Egypt
Smooth, vibration-free travel

الميزات
يعمل بالهيدروجين
يربط بين الوجهين البحري والصعيد
تنقل سلس وخالي من الاهتزازات

Transportation Rules of 2050 قواعد النقل لعام 2050

[🚫] No littering ممنوع إلقاء النفايات

[🚗] Electric & clean-energy vehicles only

مسموح بالمركبات الكهربائية والنظيفة فقط

[🚶] Pedestrian- lanes ممرات المشاة

[🚏] Landing zones مناطق الهبوط

Benefits for the Environment فوائد للبيئة

Cleaner air. هواء أنظف

Pollution will decrease. سينخفض التلوث.

Traffic on roads will be reduced. ستقل حركة المرور على الطرق.

Egypt will save more energy. ستوفر مصر المزيد من الطاقة.

Exercises on Lessons 4 & 5

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- Egypt's future transport will be
a) slower and dirty b) faster and cleaner
c) noisy and crowded d) heavy and old
- The new buses will move without a driver.
a) slowly b) safely c) dangerously d) badly
- Renewable energy will help keep the air
a) dirty b) fresh c) polluted d) hot
- Passengers must in cars to stay safe.
a) sleep b) talk c) wear seat belts d) eat
- The streets will be because of clean transportation.
a) more crowded b) quieter c) dirty d) broken

4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. stations - digital - have - will - signs - **New**.

.....

2. be - quieter - streets - will - future - **The** - in - Egypt's.

.....

3. **Electric** - move - buses - quietly - and - safely.

.....

4. vehicles - too - smoke - produce - much - **Old**.

.....

5 Punctuate the following:

1. omar works hard to make egypt's transport better.

.....

2. When will the new electric buses start in cairo

.....

6 Write an informal email of (60) words using the words below:

Write an email to your friend Aya telling her about your opinion about Egypt's future. Tell her how you imagine Egypt becoming cleaner, safer, and more eco-friendly. Your email is donia@gmail.com, and your friend's email is aya@gmail.com.

From :
To :
Subject :

Review on Unit 5

Vocabulary

announcement	إعلان	pay by card	الدفع بالبطاقة
passengers	ركاب / مسافرين	escalator	سلم كهربائي
elevator	مصعد	smart doors	أبواب ذكية
digital screen	شاشة ذكية	renewable energy	طاقة متجددة
pollution	تلوث	self-driving	قيادة ذاتية
eco-friendly	صديق للبيئة	a paper pass	بطاقة مرور ورقية
monorail	قطار أحادي السكة	LED lights	أضواء DEL
electric bus	حافلة كهربائية	electricity	كهرباء
transportation	وسائل النقل	environment	بيئة
station	محطة	rules	قواعد
ticket machine	آلة تذاكر	future	مستقبل
digital screen	شاشة رقمية	the Green Line	الخط الأخضر
metro	مترو / قطار الأنفاق	fuel	وقود
track	مسار / سكة القطار	old bus	اتوبيس قديم
air pollution	تلوث الهواء	vehicle	مركبة

Language in Use



First Conditional (Future Possibilities)

(الحالة الأولى) (احتمالات في المستقبل)

We use the **First Conditional** to talk about possible situations in the future.

If + present simple, will + base verb

If + مضارع بسيط, will + أصل الفعل

Examples:

- If you **take** the monorail, you **will arrive** faster.
- If we **use** electric buses, the environment **will be** cleaner.

Pronunciation

Triphthong is a vowel sound that combines three vowel sounds together in one syllable.

① ow-er /aʊə/

Examples: ▶ hour ▶ our ▶ flower

② ay-er /eɪə/

Examples: ▶ layer ▶ player ▶ mayor

Dictation:

machine	مقاعد / كراسي
smoke	حديث
rule	بنزين
playground	مهم
way	سريع
safe	وسائل النقل
a paper pass	محطة
track	حزام الأمان
planet	سلم كهربائي
solar power	هادئ
source	حوادث
diesel	معلومات
electricity	شارع
noise	الدفع بالبطاقة
vision	مريح
platform	قطار كهربائي تحت الأرض
signs	عملات معدنية
digital	مصعد
rule	طبيعي
automatic	مسافر

The New Cairo Metro

The New Cairo Metro is an important transportation system in Cairo. It is part of Line 3, which connects many areas of the city. The metro uses modern technology, such as smart doors, digital screens, and automatic announcements. Passengers can pay for their tickets using machines or bank cards. This makes travel fast, safe, and easy for everyone.

Smart Transportation in Egypt

Smart Transportation in Egypt is helping people travel more efficiently. The new systems are cleaner, using electricity instead of traditional fuels, which reduces pollution. They are also faster, saving time for passengers every day. Modern technology, like smart ticketing and digital information screens, makes travel easier. Egypt's smart transportation is a step toward a healthier and more connected future.

Safe transport

Ali loved riding his bike every morning. It was a safe transport way to reach school, and he enjoyed the fresh air. His friends joined him, and soon the streets were full of bikes. Using bikes reduced pollution and helped protect the environment. Everyone felt healthier, and the city became cleaner and happier because of their small but powerful choice.



Search

From : donia@gmail.com
To : aya@gmail.com
Subject : Egypt's Future

Hi Aya,

I hope you are well. I believe Egypt's future is very bright. With new industries, clean energy, and smart transportation, the country is becoming stronger and more modern. People are working hard to improve education and the environment. I feel proud to live in Egypt and excited about what is coming.

Best,
Donia

Helping the Environment

We should all try helping the environment. Using a monorail can reduce traffic and pollution in cities. Renewable energy, like solar and wind power, is a clean way to produce electricity. Choosing eco-friendly products helps protect nature. Small changes in our daily life can make a big difference for the planet.

Clean Transportation

Clean transportation helps reduce pollution in cities. Using an electric bus produces no harmful gases, and the metro is fast and efficient for many passengers. Self-driving cars can save energy and reduce traffic. Together, these modern systems make travel easier, cleaner, and better for the environment every day.



Test 11 on Unit 5

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

Total

60

1

Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

(10Ms)

escalator - screen - machine - doors - environment - elevator

Ali : Wow! This new station looks amazing!

Sara : Yes! It has smart ① and a big digital ② for information.

Ali : I can see the electric bus outside. It's so quiet!

Sara : And look, there's an escalator and an ③ for passengers.

Ali : That's great! The ticket ④ makes buying tickets easy.

Sara : I love how clean it is. It really helps the ⑤

2

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

(10Ms)

1. If the train (start), we won't reach the station quickly.
2. If the passengers stand, they (be) safe.
3. If Ali presses the button, the elevator (move) to the next floor.
4. If Ahmed (press) the wrong button, the elevator won't move to the next floor.
5. If the bus (run) on petrol, it won't help the environment.

3

Choose the correct answer:

(10Ms)

1. People should (stand - eat - run) back from the doors for safety.
2. A/An (LED - escalator - elevator) moves people up and down in a building.

Term 2

3. The electric trains save (~~food~~ - ~~time~~ - ~~air~~) by using electricity.
4. Renewable energy protects the (~~environment~~ - ~~stairs~~ - ~~machine~~) for future generations.
5. Passengers can buy tickets from the (~~platform~~ - ~~escalator~~ - ~~ticket machine~~).
6. If passengers (~~forgets~~ - ~~forget~~ - ~~forgetting~~) their cards, they will buy a tickets.
7. If the bus (~~moving~~ - ~~moved~~ - ~~moves~~) quietly, passengers will stay safe.
8. Streets will be less crowded if people (~~using~~ - ~~use~~ - ~~used~~) eco-friendly transport.
9. Passengers (~~will enjoying~~ - ~~will enjoyed~~ - ~~will enjoy~~) travel more if the buses are fast and clean.
10. If people (~~follow~~ - ~~follows~~ - ~~followed~~) the rules, accidents will happen less.

4

Read and circle the odd one out, and replace it with a correct one:

(10Ms)

1. station - ticket machine - train - environment
2. electricity - change - petrol - wind
3. safe - smart - red lights - heavy
4. people - monorail - electric bus - old bus
5. elevator - escalator - stairs - computer

5

Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

(10Ms)

In Cairo and Giza, people are traveling in smarter and cleaner ways. The new metro trains run on electricity and make no smoke. Passengers can buy tickets from a ticket machine or pay by card. At each station, there are elevators, escalators, and digital screens. Smart doors open automatically, and LED lights make the stations bright. Using electric buses and self-driving vehicles helps protect the environment and keeps the air fresh for everyone.

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. The new metro trains in Cairo and Giza produce smoke. (.....)
2. Passengers can buy tickets from a machine or pay by card. (.....)
3. Smart doors open automatically, and LED lights make the stations bright. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

4. The smart doors (play - open - sleep) automatically at the stations.
5. LED lights make the stations (dark - dirty - bright).

6 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements: (10Ms)

"Helping the Environment"

▶ monorail - renewable energy - eco-friendly clean - pollution

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 12 on Unit 5

Total

30

1

Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:



(2Ms)

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1. Passengers can only pay for tickets with cash at Giza Station. (.....)
2. The metro has smart doors and digital screens. (.....)
3. Escalators and elevators make it difficult to move between platforms. (.....)
4. The trains save electricity and help the environment. (.....)

2

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(2Ms)

1. The metro has and digital screens.
 a) schools b) smart doors c) petrol buses d) playgrounds
2. The metro runs on electricity and produces no
 a) smoke b) escalators c) elevators d) tickets
3. The air will be cleaner if vehicles electricity.
 a) used b) uses c) use d) using
4. Passengers will travel more safely if they properly.
 a) sit b) sits c) sat d) sitting

3

Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

Digital - Announcements - escalators - metro - electric

At Giza Station, passengers use a ticket machine to pay by card or cash.

- ① guide people to the correct platform. The ②
 has smart doors, elevators, and escalators for easy access. ③
 screens show the next stop and train times. Riding the ④
 trains is fast, clean, and better for the environment.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

(7Ms)

Egypt is improving its transportation system for a better future. The new underground electric train in Cairo is fast, clean, and safe for all passengers. Each train has clear signs and announcements, so travelers know where to go. Passengers can read a brochure about the stations and follow rules, like wearing a seat belt. Technology helps the trains save energy and protect the environment. In the future, transportation will become even smarter and easier for everyone. Everyone will enjoy faster, safer, and greener travel across the city.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. Passengers can read a about the stations.
a) ticket machine b) brochure c) escalator d) elevator
2. The underground train is for all passengers.
a) dirty b) slow c) safe d) noisy

B Answer the following questions:

3. What kind of train is described in the text?
▶
4. How does technology help the trains?
▶
5. What should passengers do to stay safe?
▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

(4Ms)

1. If we (used) the new metro system, will travel travel more safely.
2. Passengers (would paid) by card if they forget cash.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2Ms)

1. goes - up - and - down - The elevator - the building - in.

2. save - electricity - the - and - Electric trains - environment - help.

7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. what makes transportation safe and smart

2. reducing pollution helps keep the air clean

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below: (7Ms)

"Clean Transportation"



electric bus - metro

Handwriting practice area with dashed lines for writing.

Review 2 | On Units 4-5

Test 13 based on units 4 - 5

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

1

Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

(10Ms)

cleaner - electricity - monorail - ticket - passengers - screens

Mona : Omar, have you heard about Egypt's new transportation projects in Cairo and Giza?

Omar : Yes! I read about the new ① that runs above the ground on a single track.

Mona : That's right! At each station, people can see digital ② and listen to helpful announcements.

Omar : I also liked the new electric bus. It runs on ③ , so it doesn't make smoke and helps the environment.

Mona : That's amazing! Passengers can pay for their ④ by card or phone, which makes travel much easier.

Omar : I can't wait to try them. These systems will make the cities ⑤ , and smarter!

2

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

(10Ms)

1. If passengers (**forgot**) to follow the rules, the bus will not run safely.
2. Parents should (**courage**) their children every day.
3. Did drivers (**used to**) check the smart doors before starting the bus?
4. People (**not take**) the monorail or electric buses in the past.
5. The government plans to (**wide**) the roads next year.

Term 2

3

Choose the correct answer:**(10Ms)**

1. Self-driving cars use cameras and (**computers** - **scissors** - **paintbrushes**) to move safely on the road.
2. Heavy rain can (**darkness** - **darken** - **dark**) the color of the sand.
3. Passengers mustn't block the (**escalators** - **bridges** - **smart doors**) on electric buses or monorails.
4. Using eco-friendly transport helps reduce (**pollution** - **electricity** - **soil**) and keeps the air fresh.
5. The textile industry produces (**announcements** - **elevators** - **fabrics**) that are sold in Egypt and abroad.
6. (**Does** - **Did** - **Do**) students use to take notes on small boards?
7. If passengers listen to announcements, they (**know** - **will know** - **knew**) the next station.
8. Workers (**didn't use to** - **doesn't use to** - **don't use to**) have advanced equipment like they do today.
9. People plant trees to (**enriches** - **enrich** - **enriching**) the soil with nutrients.
10. If we (**uses** - **use** - **using**) electric cars, the air will be cleaner.

4

Read and circle the odd one out, and replace it with a correct one:**(10Ms)**

1. water - petrol - wind - sun
2. woolen - quickly - wooden - golden
3. chair - flower - power - shower
4. pay - help - travel - people
5. electric bus - monorail - elevator - electric car

5 Read the text and answer the questions:

(10Ms)

Luxor Temple, located on the east bank of the Nile, is one of Egypt's most famous historical sites. It was constructed to celebrate the power of the pharaohs and honor the god Amun. The temple features massive statues, impressive stone columns, and detailed hieroglyphics that tell stories of ancient ceremonies. Tourists can explore its grand courtyards and halls, imagining life thousands of years ago. Luxor Temple remains a symbol of Egypt's rich culture, attracting visitors from around the world to admire its ancient beauty and history.

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Luxor Temple was built to honor the god Amun and the pharaohs. ()
2. The temple is famous for its pyramids and sand sculptures. ()
3. Visitors can walk through the temple and see hieroglyphics on the walls. ()

B Choose the correct answer:

4. The temple has (stone columns - metal towers - glass walls).
5. Luxor Temple is a symbol of Egypt's (history and culture - modern technology - sports achievements).

6 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements: (10Ms)

"New Alamein City"

coastal city - sandy beaches - tourist spot - visitors - hotels

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Test 14 based on units 4 - 5



نص الاستماع موجود آخر الكتاب.

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Egypt has built modern infrastructure to make daily life better. ()
2. New roads, bridges, and tunnels make travel slower. ()
3. The New Administrative Capital and transport systems help the economy grow. ()
4. Modern transport systems make it harder for people to reach work and school. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (2Ms)

1. Passengers can buy tickets easily from a
 a) smart door b) digital screen c) ticket machine d) escalator
2. People can walk safely on a along the beach.
 a) university b) pharaohs c) shopping center d) walkway
3. People depend on farming many years ago.
 a) use to b) used to c) didn't use to d) does use to
4. I you with your homework if you ask me.
 a) helps b) helped c) help d) will help

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

self-driving - pollution - vehicles - future - electric

In the future, people will travel in smarter and cleaner ways. Many new ① are becoming eco-friendly, like ② buses and trains, which use less fuel and make less noise. Some cars today are even ③ Countries are also using renewable energy to power transportation. This helps reduce ④ and protect Earth for future generations.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

(7Ms)

Egypt has started new infrastructure projects to improve daily life. In the past, roads were narrow and crowded, making travel and transporting goods slow. Today, engineers are building modern highways, bridges, and tunnels that connect the country. The New Administrative Capital and new bridges in Cairo show progress. Modern transport systems help people travel faster, reach work and school easily, support the

A Choose the correct answer:

- In the past, roads were narrow and crowded, making slow.
 - travel and transporting goods
 - building bridges
 - going to school
 - reading books
- Modern transport systems help people travel faster and
 - reach work and school easily
 - build tunnels
 - buy tickets
 - eat lunch

B Answer the following questions:

- What is the purpose of Egypt's new infrastructure projects?
▶
- Name two modern constructions mentioned in the text.
▶
- How do modern transport systems benefit the economy and daily life?
▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

- If it rains tomorrow, we (stay) at home
- My grandmother (use to) cook on a fire when she was young.

6

Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2Ms)

1. big - digital - there - Inside - screens - are - the - train,.



2. wide - green parks - and - roads - the city - in - There are.



7

Punctuate the following:

(4Ms)

1. what time does the train arrive



2. please, don't stand near the doors



8

Write an email of SIXTY (60) words using the words below: (7Ms)

"The future of smart cities"



great - transportation

Handwriting practice area for the email. The area contains several lines of dotted lines for writing practice.

THE LIBRARY
REOPENED!



Story's Video

Unit 6 Story

The Library That Time Forgot

المكتبة التي نسيها الزمن

Learning Outcomes

By the end of this unit, students will be able to:



Speaking

- Retell the sequence of events using target vocabulary
- Discuss key story elements (**characters**, **setting** and **events**) using simple language
- Ask and answer simple questions about characters and events
- Discuss the moral of the story



Listening

- Retell the sequence of events using target vocabulary
- Discuss key story elements (**characters**, **setting** and **events**) using simple language
- Ask and answer simple questions about characters and events
- Discuss the moral of the story



Reading

- Understand and define new vocabulary words in context
- Identify the main characters, setting, and key events in a story
- Answer comprehension questions about the story
- Identify supporting details from a story read aloud
- Recall story events in the correct order after listening
- Identify the character who speaks in a story's dialog read aloud



Writing

- Complete sentences using vocabulary from the story
- Write a paragraph about the story using target vocabulary words and past simple tense

The Characters الشخصيات



Ziad



Hana



Fady



Lara



Adam



The teacher

Adam: A smart and curious boy who loves science. He found a book with diagrams for simple machines and science experiments.

آدم: ولد ذكي وفضولي يحب العلم. يستمتع بمعرفة كيف تعمل الأشياء ولديه دائماً أفكار جديدة. وهو من وجد كتاباً يحتوي على رسومات توضيحية للآلات البسيطة والتجارب العلمية.

Lara: A girl who pays attention to small details and loves discovering new things. She is the one who found the key.

لارا: فتاة تهتم بالتفاصيل الصغيرة وتحب اكتشاف الأشياء الجديدة. هي من وجدت المفتاح.

Ziad: An adventurous boy who enjoys exploring and is always excited to try something new. He discovered the old maps in the library.

زياد: ولد مغامر يستمتع بالاستكشاف ويحب تجربة كل ما هو جديد. وهو الذي اكتشف الخرائط القديمة في المكتبة.

Hana: A thoughtful and caring girl who notices when something is wrong and looks for ways to help. She noticed that the fountain needed fixing.

هنا: فتاة لطيفة وتهتم بالآخرين. تلاحظ عندما يكون هناك شيء غير صحيح وتبحث عن طريقة للمساعدة. هي التي لاحظت أن النافورة تحتاج إلى إصلاح.

Fady: A helpful and friendly boy who was brave enough to try the key in the library door and later worked with everyone to bring the library back to life.

فادي: ولد ودود ومساعد. كان شجاعاً بما يكفي ليحرب المفتاح في باب المكتبة، ثم عمل مع الجميع لإعادة المكتبة إلى الحياة.

The Teacher: A kind and supportive person who encourages the students to learn and explore. He trusts them.

المُعلِّم: شخص لطيف وداعم يشجع الطلاب على التعلم والاستكشاف. يثق بهم.

The School Principal: He is surprised and proud when the students bring the library back to life. He helps make the library open for everyone.

المدير: شعر بالدهشة والفخر عندما أعاد الأطفال المكتبة للحياة. وساعد على جعل المكتبة مفتوحة للجميع.

The Townspeople: They are friendly and helpful neighbors. When they heard about the library, they worked together with the children to clean, repair, and reopen it for everyone to enjoy.

أهالي البلدة: جيران ودودون ومساعدون. عندما علموا بأمر المكتبة، تعاونوا مع الأطفال لتنظيفها وإصلاحها وإعادة افتتاحها ليستفيد منها الجميع.

Setting الزمان والمكان

The time and place of the story: زمان ومكان القصة:

- **Time:** The events start one warm afternoon and continue over the next week.

الزمان: تبدأ الأحداث في ظهيرة دافئة وتستمر على مدى أسبوع.

- **Place:** A small town, mainly the old library in the town square, and the school storage room.

المكان: مدينة صغيرة، وتتركز الأحداث في المكتبة القديمة في ساحة البلدة وفي غرفة مخزن المدرسة.

The main events in order:

الأحداث الرئيسية بالترتيب:

- 1 The Discovery:** While cleaning the school storage room, the friends find a rusty old key tagged "Library".

الاكتشاف: أثناء تنظيف غرفة تخزين المدرسة، يعثر الأصدقاء على مفتاح قديم مصداً يحمل بطاقة مكتوب عليها "مكتبة".

- 2 The Adventure Begins:** After school, they use the key to open the old, forgotten library.

بداية المغامرة: بعد المدرسة، يستخدمون المفتاح لفتح المكتبة القديمة المنسية.

- 3 Exploring the Treasure:** Inside the library, they discover old books, maps, travelers' letters, and science diagrams.

استكشاف الكنز: بداخل المكتبة، يكتشفون كتباً قديمة وخرائط ورسائل للمسافرين ورسوماً توضيحية علمية.

- 4 Learning and Applying:** They read and learn from the books. They use a guide to diagnose the town's broken fountain.

التعلم والتطبيق: يقرؤون ويتعلمون من الكتب. يستخدمون دليلًا لتشخيص مشكلة نافورة المدينة المعطلة.

- 5 The First Fix:** With a local plumber's help, they fix the clogged pipe and the fountain works again.

أول إصلاح: بمساعدة سباك محلي، يصلحون الأنبوب المسدود فتعمل النافورة مجدداً.

- 6 Community Action:** The school principal and townspeople help clean, repair, and reopen the library.

حملة مجتمعية: يساعد مدير المدرسة وأهالي المدينة في تنظيف وإصلاح وإعادة فتح المكتبة.

- 7 A New Beginning:** The friends become the library's first volunteers.

بداية جديدة: يصبح الأصدقاء أول متطوعي المكتبة.

Theme (Moral)

الفكرة الرئيسية (الدرس المستفاد)

The message or lesson of the story:

الرسالة أو الدرس المستفاد من القصة:

- 1 Knowledge is a treasure that can solve problems.
المعرفة كنز يمكن أن يحل المشاكل.
- 2 Teamwork and community effort can bring positive change.
العمل الجماعي والجهد المجتمعي يمكن أن يحدث تغييرًا إيجابيًا.
- 3 Curiosity and exploration can lead to wonderful discoveries.
الفضول والاستكشاف يمكن أن يقودا إلى اكتشافات رائعة.

Picture Dictionary

القاموس المصور



rusty key مفتاح صدئ



library مكتبة



dust غبار



map خريطة



fountain نافورة



pipe أنبوب



plumber سباك



volunteer متطوع



treasure

كنز



windmill طاحونة هوائية

Definitions تعريفات

Student's
Book

dust	tiny particles that collect on surfaces when they are not cleaned.
storage	a place where things are kept until they are needed.
rusty	covered with reddish-brown spots from metal getting old and wet.
clinked	made a short, ringing sound, like metal hitting metal.
library	a place where books are kept for people to read or borrow.
creak	a long, squeaky sound made when something like a door opens or closes.
stacks	piles or groups of things placed one on top of another.
windmill	a machine with blades that turn in the wind, often used to make power or pump water.
volunteers	people who offer to do work or help without being paid.
town	a place where people live that is smaller than a city but bigger than a village.
clogged	blocked so that nothing can pass through.
pipe	a long, hollow tube used to carry liquids from one place to another.
fountain	a structure that sends water up into the air.

Part 1



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية

known	معروف / مشهور	sunlight	ضوء الشمس / أشعة الشمس
colorful	ملون / زاهي الألوان	cracks	شقوق / تصدعات
markets	أسواق	town	مدينة
library	مكتبة	warm	دافئ
locked	مغلق / مقفل	clinked	طقطق (صوت خفيف معدني)
dust	غبار	floor	أرضية
bronze	برونزي	shiny	لامع
shuttered	مغلق بالأبواب / مُصَفَّد	exclaimed	صاح / قال بانفعال
gathered	تجمع / جُمعت	whispered	همس
steps	درجات / خطوات	excited	متحمّس
forgotten	منسي	heavy	ثقيل
storage	تخزين / مخزن	lock	قفل
rusty	صدئ	creak	مرير (صوت الأبواب أو الأرضية عند الاحتكاك)
square	ساحة / ميدان	slid	أدخل / مرّر بسلاسة
exchanged	تبادل		

Important Phrases

عبارات هامة

colorful markets	أسواق ملونة / زاهية الألوان	friendly people	أناس ودودون / لطفاء
locked doors	أبواب مغلقة	shuttered windows	نوافذ مغلقة بـ ألواح خشبية

a rusty object

جسم صدئ (شيء عليه صدأ)

a deep creak

صرير عميق (صوت احتكاك)

one warm afternoon

في إحدى الظهيرات الدافئة

something shiny

شيء لامع

exchanged excited looks

تبادلوا نظرات متحمسة

heavy wooden doors

أبواب خشبية ثقيلة

in the heart of a small town

في وسط (قلب) بلدة صغيرة

clinked onto the floor

طقطق (أو سقط بصوت معدني خفيف) على الأرض

holding it up

ممسكًا به عاليًا / رفعه بيده

slid the key into the lock

أدخل المفتاح في القفل

In the heart of a small town known for its colorful markets and friendly people, there stood an old **library** with locked doors and shuttered windows. **Dust** gathered on its steps, and most people had forgotten it was even there. One warm afternoon,



Adam, Lara, Ziad, Hana, and Fady were helping their teacher clean the school's **storage** room. As Ziad moved an old desk, a **rusty** object **clinked** onto the floor.

في وسط (قلب) مدينة صغيرة تشتهر بأسواقها الملونة وسكانها الودودين، كانت هناك مكتبة قديمة بأبواب مقفلة ونوافذ مُصَفَّحة. يتراكم الغبار على درجاتها، وقد نسي معظم الناس أنها كانت موجودة أصلاً. في إحدى الظهيرات الدافئة، كان آدم ولارا وزباد وهنا وفادي يساعدون مُعَلِّمهم في تنظيف مخزن المدرسة. وفيما كان زياد يحرك مكتباً قديماً، سقط جسم صدئ على الأرض مُحدثاً رنينًا.

"Look, there's something shiny in the back of the desk. It's a key!" Lara exclaimed, holding it up. It was large and bronze, with a tag that read: Library. "انظروا! هناك شيء لامع خلف المكتب. إنه مفتاح!" صرخت لارا وهي ترفعه. كان مفتاحًا كبيرًا من البرونز، وعليه بطاقة مكتوب عليها: "المكتبة".

"Do you think it could open the old library in the square?" Hana whispered. The friends exchanged excited looks. After school, they hurried to the library's heavy wooden doors. Fady slid the key into the lock. With a deep creak, the door was open.

"هل تعتقدون أنه قد يفتح المكتبة القديمة في الميدان؟" همست هنا: تبادل الأصدقاء نظرات مليئة بالحماس. وبعد انتهاء اليوم الدراسي، أسرعوا نحو الأبواب الخشبية الثقيلة للمكتبة. أدخل فادي المفتاح في القفل. وبصوت صرير عميق، انفتح الباب.

Questions and Answers

Answer the following questions:

1. Who are the main characters in the story?

▶ Adam, Lara, Ziad, Hana, and Fady

من هم الشخصيات الرئيسية في القصة؟
آدم، لارا، زياد، هنا، وفادي

2. Where does the story take place?

▶ In a small town

أين تدور أحداث القصة؟
في مدينة صغيرة

3. What were the children doing in the school storage room?

▶ They were helping their teacher clean it.

ماذا كان الأطفال يفعلون في غرفة مخزن المدرسة؟
كانوا يساعدون معلمهم في تنظيفها.

4. What did Ziad do that caused something to fall?

▶ He moved an old desk.

ماذا فعل زياد مما تسبب في سقوط شيء ما؟
حرك مكتبًا قديمًا.

5. What was the object that fell on the floor?

▶ A rusty key

ما هو الشيء الذي سقط على الأرض؟
مفتاح صدئ

6. Who saw the key first?

▶ Lara

من رأى المفتاح أولاً؟
لارا

7. What was written on the key's tag?

▶ "Library"

ماذا كان مكتوبًا على بطاقة المفتاح؟
"مكتبة"

8. What did Hana whisper to her friends? ماذا همست هنا لأصدقائها؟

▶ "Do you think it could open the old library in the square?"

"هل تظنون أنه يمكن أن يفتح المكتبة القديمة في الساحة؟"

9. How did the friends react upon finding the key?

▶ They exchanged excited looks.

كيف كان رد فعل الأصدقاء؟
تبادلوا نظرات مليئة بالحماس.

10. When did they go to the library?

▶ After school

متى ذهبوا إلى المكتبة؟
بعد انتهاء اليوم الدراسي

11. What were the library doors made of?

▶ Heavy wood خشب ثقيل

من ماذا صُنعت أبواب المكتبة؟

12. Who slid the key into the lock?

▶ Fady

من أدخل المفتاح في القفل؟
فادي

13. What sound did the door make when it opened?

▶ A deep creak

ما هو الصوت الذي أحدثه الباب عند فتحه؟
صوت صرير عميق

14. What did the friends find inside the library? ماذا وجد الأصدقاء داخل المكتبة؟

▶ Old books, maps, travelers' letters, and science diagrams.

كتب قديمة، وخرائط، ورسائل للمسافرين، ورسوم توضيحية علمية.

Exercises on Part 1

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. The story took place in a big city.

()

2. The children were playing in the storage room.

()

3. The key was new and shiny. (.....)
4. The key had a tag that said "Library" on it. (.....)
5. The friends went to the library after school hours. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The children found the key while they were
 a) playing football b) helping their teacher
 c) reading a book d) eating lunch
2. What fell on the floor when Ziad moved the desk?
 a) A book b) A shiny coin
 c) A rusty object d) A pen
3. Hana whispered, "Do you think it could open?"
 a) the school gate b) the teacher's office
 c) a treasure box d) the old library
4. The doors of the library were made of
 a) heavy wood b) glass c) metal d) plastic
5. When the door opened, it made a sound.
 a) quiet sound b) deep creak
 c) ringing sound d) loud bang
6. Who slid the key into the lock of the library?
 a) Adam b) Lara c) Fady d) Hana

3 Read and complete the text with words in the box:

lock - dusty - library - creak - key

One warm afternoon, the children were helping their teacher clean the school storage room. The friends found an old ① that opened the door to the ② The room inside was full of ③ books. Fady put the key in the lock. With a deep ④, the door opened. They stepped inside to explore and discover the hidden treasures.

4

Answer the following questions:

1. What did Lara do when she saw the key?
2. What did the key look like?
3. Where was the library located?
4. How did the friends react to the idea of opening the library?
5. When did the children go to the library?

Part 2



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية

shelf - shelves	رف - أرشف	stepped	خطى
space	مكان / ركن	dusty	مغبر / مغطى بالغبار
cracks	فتحات / شقوق	streamed	تدفق / انساب
river	نهر	machine	آلة / جهاز
mountain	جبل	guide	دليل / مرشد
village	قرية	sparkled	تلألأ / لمع
collection	مجموعة	cheered	هتف / شجع
handwritten	مكتوب بخط اليد	townspeople	أهالي المدينة
thick	سميك	knowledge	معرفة / علم
local plumber	سباك محلي	stacks	أكوام / مجموعات مرتبة
diagrams	رسومات توضيحية	lighting up	يضيء / مضاء
unrolling	يفرد	ribbon	شريط

Important Phrases

عبارات هامة

the air smelled of paper and history **stacks of forgotten knowledge**

وانتشر في الهواء عبق الورق والتاريخ

أكوام من المعرفة المنسية

collection of handwritten letters **historical events**

مجموعة من الرسائل المكتوبة بخط اليد

الأحداث التاريخية

figured out the problem

حدد سبب المشكلة

stepped into a big room

دخلوا غرفة كبيرة

dusty books filled every space

كانت الكتب المغبرة تملأ كل مكان

from long ago

من زمن بعيد

sunlight streamed through cracks **sparkled in the sunlight**

كان ضوء الشمس يتسلل من الشقوق

تَلألأ في ضوء الشمس

clogged pipe

أنبوب مسدود

They stepped into a big room full of tall shelves. Dusty books filled every space, and the air smelled of paper and history. Sunlight streamed through **cracks** in the shutters, lighting up **stacks** of forgotten knowledge.



دخلوا غرفة كبيرة مليئة بالرفوف العالية. كانت الكتب المغبرة تملأ كل مكان، وكانت رائحة الهواء تفوح بعبق الورق والتاريخ. تسللت أشعة الشمس من فتحات خشب النوافذ، مضيئة أكوامًا من المعرفة المنسية.

"Look at these maps!" Ziad called, unrolling a sheet of paper showing rivers, mountains, and villages from long ago.



Lara found a collection of **handwritten** letters tied with a ribbon. "These are from travelers," she said, eyes wide. "They describe places I've never heard of."

"انظروا إلى هذه الخرائط!" نادى زياد وهو يفرد ورقة تظهر
أنهارًا وجبالًا وقرى من زمن بعيد.
وجدت لارا مجموعة من الرسائل مكتوبة بخط اليد
ومربوطة بشريط. "قالت وعيناها متسعان: "هذه رسائل
من المسافرين، تصف أماكن لم أسمع بها من قبل."



Adam pulled a thick book from the shelf.
Inside were diagrams for simple machines and science experiments. "We
could actually make some of these," he said.

Over the next week, the friends met in the library every afternoon. They
read about plants that could clean water, built a small **windmill** from one of
the diagrams, and learned about historical events that shaped their **town**.

سحب آدم كتابًا ثقيلًا من على الرف. كان يحتوي على رسومات توضيحية لماكينات بسيطة وتجارب
علمية. قال: "يمكننا بالفعل صنع بعض هذه الأشياء."

خلال الأسبوع التالي، اجتمع الأصدقاء في المكتبة كل يوم بعد الظهر. قرأوا عن نباتات يمكنها تنقية
الماء، وبنوا طاحونة هواء صغيرة مستعينين بأحد الرسومات، وتعلموا عن الأحداث التاريخية التي
شكلت مدينتهم.

One day, Hana noticed the **fountain** in the town square wasn't working.
Using a guide from the library, they figured out the problem was a **clogged**
pipe. With the help of a local plumber, they fixed it. Soon, the fountain's
water sparkled in the sunlight, and the townspeople cheered.

في يوم من الأيام، لاحظت هنا أن نافورة المدينة لم تعد تعمل. باستخدام دليل من المكتبة، اكتشفوا
أن المشكلة كانت أنبوبًا مسدودًا. وبمساعدة سباك محلي، قاموا بإصلاحه. سرعان ما تلاأت مياه
النافورة تحت أشعة الشمس، وهتف سكان المدينة فرحًا.

Questions and Answers

 **Answer the following questions:**

1. What was inside the big room of the library?

ماذا كان داخل الغرفة الكبيرة في المكتبة؟

▶ Tall shelves and dusty books.

رفوف عالية وكتب مغبرة.

2. How did sunlight enter the library?
▶ Through cracks in the shutters.

كيف دخل ضوء الشمس إلى المكتبة؟
من خلال شقوق الألواح الخشبية.

3. What did Ziad find?

ماذا وجد زياد؟

▶ Maps showing rivers, mountains, and villages from long ago.

خرائط تظهر أنهارًا وجبالًا وقرى من زمن بعيد.

4. What did Lara find?

ماذا وجدت لارا؟

▶ Handwritten letters from travelers.

رسائل مكتوبة بخط اليد من مسافرين.

5. What was in the thick book that Adam found?

ماذا كان في الكتاب السميك الذي وجدته آدم؟

▶ Diagrams for simple machines and science experiments.

رسومات توضيحية لآلات بسيطة وتجارب علمية.

6. What did Adam say they could do with the diagrams?

ماذا قال آدم أنهم يمكنهم أن يفعلوا بالرسومات التوضيحية؟

▶ They could actually make some of them.

يمكنهم بالفعل صنع بعضها.

7. How often did the friends meet in the library?

كم مرة كان الأصدقاء يلتقون في المكتبة؟

▶ Every afternoon for a week.

كل يوم بعد الظهر لمدة أسبوع.

8. Mention three things they learned from the library books.

اذكر ثلاثة أشياء تعلموها من كتب المكتبة.

▶ Plants that clean water, how to build a windmill, and town history.

نباتات تنقي الماء، وكيفية بناء طاحونة هوائية، وتاريخ المدينة.

9. What problem did Hana notice in the town square?

ما المشكلة التي لاحظتها هنا في ساحة المدينة؟

▶ The fountain wasn't working.

النافورة لا تعمل.

10. How did they figure out the problem with the fountain?

كيف اكتشفوا مشكلة النافورة؟

▶ They used a guide from the library.

استخدموا دليلًا من المكتبة.

11. What was wrong with the fountain?

▶ It had a clogged pipe.

ما الخطأ في النافورة؟

كان بها أنبوب مسدود.

Unit 6

12. Who helped them fix the fountain?

▶ A local plumber

من ساعدهم في إصلاح النافورة؟
سباك محلي

13. What was the result of fixing the fountain?

▶ The water sparkled, and the townspeople cheered.

ما كانت نتيجة إصلاح النافورة؟
تلألأت مياه النافورة وهتف سكان المدينة فرحًا.

14. What does this part show about using knowledge?

▶ Knowledge from books can help us solve real-life problems.

ماذا يظهر هذا الجزء عن استخدام المعرفة؟

يمكن للمعرفة المأخوذة من الكتب أن تساعدنا في حل مشاكل الحياة الواقعية.

15. What is the main idea of this part?

▶ The friends used what they learned in the library to help their town.

ما هي الفكرة الرئيسية لهذا الجزء؟
استخدم الأصدقاء ما تعلموه في المكتبة لمساعدة مدينتهم.

Exercises on Part 2

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. The library was empty and had no books. (.....)
2. Lara found maps of rivers and mountains. (.....)
3. The friends built a small windmill. (.....)
4. They fixed the fountain without any help. (.....)
5. The townspeople were happy when the fountain worked again. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The air in the library smelled of
a) flowers b) paper and history c) food d) perfume
2. Adam found a book with diagrams for
a) cooking recipes b) famous people
c) drawing pictures d) simple machines and experiments

3. The friends met in the library every
 a) afternoon b) morning c) evening d) weekend
4. The problem with the fountain was a pipe.
 a) leaking b) broken c) clogged d) rusty
5. They fixed the fountain with the help of a
 a) teacher b) librarian c) doctor d) plumber

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

windmill - diagrams - plumber - clogged - travelers

That afternoon, the friends returned to the library, excited to explore its hidden treasures. Lara found letters from ① Adam found a book with ② for simple machines and they built a small ③ They discovered the fountain had a clogged pipe. A local ④ helped them fix it. Soon, the fountain's water sparkled, and everyone in the town cheered with joy.

4 Answer the following questions:

1. Why were the books in the library dusty?
 ▶
2. What did the friends build using the diagrams from the book?
 ▶
3. Who noticed that the fountain was not working?
 ▶
4. How did the townspeople react after the fountain was fixed?
 ▶
5. Why did the friends return to the library every afternoon?
 ▶



Main Vocabulary

الكلمات الأساسية

spread	انتشرت	volunteers	متطوعين
discoveries	اكتشافات	official	رسمي
alive	على قيد الحياة	ceremony	مراسم / احتفال
treasure	كنز	repaired	أصلح / تم إصلاحه
reopened	أعيد فتحه		

Important Phrases

عبارات هامة

word spread quickly

انتشرت الأخبار سريعًا

with the town's help

بمساعدة أهل المدينة

first official volunteers

أول متطوعيها الرسميين

reopening ceremony

مراسم إعادة الافتتاح

opened our minds

فتح عقولنا

open to everyone

مفتوح للجميع

Word spread quickly about the children's discoveries. The school principal visited the library, surprised to see it alive again.

"This place is a **treasure**," he said. "It should be open to everyone."

"Let's ask the townspeople to help, we can all work together to fix it," Adam said.

انتشرت الأخبار سريعًا عن اكتشافات الأطفال. زار مدير المدرسة المكتبة، مندهشًا لرؤيتها على قيد الحياة مجددًا. قال "هذا المكان كنز، ويجب أن يكون مفتوحًا للجميع." قال آدم "لنطلب من أهل المدينة المساعدة، يمكننا جميعًا أن نعمل معًا لإصلاحه."



With the town's help, the library was cleaned, repaired, and reopened. The friends became its first official **volunteers**, helping others find books, maps, and ideas. As they stood together at the reopening ceremony, Fady smiled. "We thought the key only opened a door," he said, "but it actually opened our minds."

بمساعدة أهل المدينة، تم تنظيف المكتبة وإصلاحها وإعادة فتحها. وأصبح الأصدقاء أول متطوعيها الرسميين، يساعدون الآخرين في العثور على الكتب والخرائط والأفكار. وأثناء وقوفهم معًا في حفل الافتتاح، ابتسم فادي قائلاً: "ظننا أن المفتاح يفتح بابًا فقط، لكنه في الحقيقة فتح عقولنا."

Questions and Answers

Answer the following questions:

1. How did the word spread? كيف انتشر الخبر؟
▶ It spread quickly. انتشر سريعًا.
2. Who visited the library and was surprised? من زار المكتبة وكان مندهشًا؟
▶ The school principal مدير المدرسة
3. What did the principal say about the library? ماذا قال المدير عن المكتبة؟
▶ "This place is a treasure. It should be open to everyone."
"هذا المكان كنز. يجب أن يكون مفتوحًا للجميع."
4. What did Adam suggest they do? ماذا اقترح آدم أن يفعلوا؟
▶ Ask the townspeople to help so they could all work together to fix it. أن يطلبوا من أهالي المدينة المساعدة حتى يتمكنوا جميعًا من العمل معًا لإصلاحها.
5. Who helped to clean and repair the library? من ساعد في تنظيف وإصلاح المكتبة؟
▶ The townspeople أهالي المدينة
6. What happened to the library in the end? ماذا حدث للمكتبة في النهاية؟
▶ It was cleaned, repaired, and reopened.. تم تنظيفها وإصلاحها وإعادة فتحها.
7. What did the friends become at the library? ماذا أصبح الأصدقاء في المكتبة؟
▶ Its first official volunteers. أول متطوعيها الرسميين.
8. What was their job as volunteers? ماذا كانت وظيفتهم كمطوعين؟
▶ Helping others find books, maps, and ideas. مساعدة الآخرين في العثور على الكتب والخرائط والأفكار.

9. Where were the friends standing at the end of the story?

أين كان الأصدقاء واقفين في نهاية القصة؟
في حفل الافتتاح.

▶ At the reopening ceremony.

10. Who smiled and spoke at the ceremony?

من ابتسم وتكلم في الحفل؟
فادي

▶ Fady

11. What did Fady say the key actually opened?

ماذا قال فادي إن المفتاح فتح في الحقيقة؟
عقولهم

▶ Their minds

12. What is the main result of the children's project?

ما هي النتيجة الرئيسية لمشروع الأطفال؟
أعيد فتح المكتبة للجميع.

▶ The library was reopened for everyone.

13. What does the story show about community?

ماذا تظهر القصة عن المجتمع؟

▶ When a community works together, it can achieve great things.

عندما يعمل المجتمع معًا، يمكنه تحقيق أشياء عظيمة.

14. What is the final, most important message of the story?

ما هي الرسالة النهائية الأكثر أهمية في القصة؟

▶ Knowledge and learning can open our minds.

المعرفة والتعلم يمكنهما أن يفتحا عقولنا.

Exercises on Part 3

1 Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. The school principal was angry about the library. (.....)
2. Adam wanted to work alone to fix the library. (.....)
3. The townspeople helped to clean and repair the library. (.....)
4. The friends became the library's first volunteers. (.....)
5. Fady said that the key could only open a book. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1. The principal said the library was a
 a) problem b) treasure c) game d) school
2. suggested asking the townspeople for help.
 a) Lara b) Hana c) Adam d) Ziad
3. The friends helped others find books, maps, and
 a) money b) ideas c) food d) toys
4. Fady spoke at the ceremony.
 a) school b) birthday c) town d) reopening
5. Fady said the key opened their
 a) hearts b) books c) minds d) eyes

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

treasure - volunteers - reopened - minds - townspeople

Word spread quickly about the children's discoveries. The principal said the library was a ① The ② helped fix it. It was cleaned, repaired, and ③ The friends became its first official volunteers. Fady said the key opened their ④ As they stood together at the reopening ceremony, everyone felt proud of what they had achieved.

4 Answer the following questions:

1. Why did the principal want the library to be open to everyone?

▶

2. How did the townspeople show their support for the library?

▶

3. What made the children proud at the reopening ceremony?

▶

4. Why was the library important to the community?



5. What lesson can we learn from the children's teamwork?



General Exercises



1

Read and write **T** (True) or **F** (False):

1. The old library was dusty before the children found the key. (.....)
2. The key the children found was silver and very small. (.....)
3. The children built a windmill using instructions from a book in the library. (.....)
4. The townspeople refused to help clean and repair the library. (.....)
5. Fady said the key only opened a door, not their minds. (.....)

2

Choose the correct answer from **a**, **b**, **c**, or **d**:

1. On the key's tag, it was written " ".
 a) School b) Library c) Museum d) Town Hall
2. The children built a small using diagrams from a book in the library.
 a) teacher b) librarian c) volunteer d) windmill
3. Lara found tied with a ribbon.
 a) letters b) keys c) machines d) maps
4. The fountain was not working because of a
 a) broken wheel b) clogged pipe c) missing key d) small hole
5. Fady said the key opened their
 a) hearts b) doors c) minds d) books



3 Read and complete the sentences with the words in the box:

library - fountain - key - maps - plumber

1. The friends used the old to open the door.
2. Ziad found old showing rivers and mountains.
3. The town's wasn't working because of a clogged pipe.
4. A helped them fix the pipe.
5. They spent their afternoons reading in the

4 Answer the following questions:

1. What does the story suggest about old places like libraries?
▶
2. What did the school principal say about the library?
▶
3. What did the children discover inside the library?
▶
4. How did the children help fix the fountain in the town square?
▶
5. How did the children's discoveries in the library help the town?
▶

Student's Book Exercises



Student's Book

1 Choose the correct answer:

1. What did the friends find in the school storage room?

a) A dusty book	b) An old bronze key
c) A map of the town	d) A windmill
2. How did the friends help the town after exploring the library?

a) They built a new library	b) They opened a museum
c) They fixed the fountain	d) They cleaned the streets

3. What is the moral of the story?

- a) Keys are important tools
- b) Libraries are only for reading books
- c) History is boring
- d) Working together and learning can help the community

2

Answer the following questions:

1. Can you give an example from the story where learning helped solve a problem?



2. How did the children help the town with what they learned?



3. Why did Fady say, "We thought the key only opened a door, but it actually opened our minds"?



3

Read and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1. The library was always open and full of people. (.....)
- 2. The children used a map to find treasure. (.....)
- 3. The children used what they learned to help the town. (.....)
- 4. The school principal thought the library should stay closed. (.....)
- 5. The story teaches that knowledge can change lives. (.....)

4

Who said these words?

- 1. "Look! There's something shiny on the back of the desk." (.....)
- 2. "These are from travelers. They describe places I've never heard of." (.....)
- 3. "We could actually make some of these." (.....)
- 4. "This place is a treasure. It should be open to everyone." (.....)

5. "Let's ask the town people to help; we can all work together to fix it." (.....)

6. "We thought the key only opened a door, but it actually opened our minds." (.....)

5 Speaking activity:

Pair Work

- Talk with your partner about the story.
- Use these questions to guide you:
 - o Which part did you like most?
 - o Which character do you think was the leader? Why?
 - o What would you do if you found an old key like theirs?

6 Write a short diary entry from one of the children's points of view:

Guidelines:

- o Write a short paragraph
- o Use past tense verbs
- o Describe your feelings and what happened
- o End with what you learned from the experience

Start like this

Dear Diary,

Today was unbelievable! While cleaning the storage room, we found an old key...

.....

.....

.....

.....

The Story Answers

Exercises on Part 1

1. Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. F 2. F 3. F
4. T 5. T

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. b) helping their teacher
2. c) A rusty object
3. d) the old library
4. a) heavy wood
5. b) deep creak
6. c) Fady
7. c) announcement

3. Read and complete the text with words in the box:

1. key 2. library
3. dusty. 4. vreak

Answer the following questions:

1. "Look, there's something shiny in the back of the desk. It's a key!"
2. It was large and bronze, with a tag that read: Library.
3. In the square.
4. They were excited.
5. After school.

Exercises on Part 2

1. Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. F 2. F 3. T
4. F 5. T

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. () paper and history
2. (x) simple machines and experiments
3. (x) afternoon
4. () clogged
5. () plumber

3. Read and complete the text with words in the box:

1. travelers 2. diagrams
3. windmill. 4. plumber

4. Answer the following questions:

1. They were very old.
2. A windmill.
3. Hana.

4. They cheered with joy.
5. To explore its hidden treasure.

Exercises on Part 3

1. Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. F 2. F 3. T
4. T 5. F

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. (b) treasure
2. (c) Adam
3. (b) ideas
4. (d) reopening
5. c) minds

3. Read and complete the text with words in the box:

1. treasure 2. townspeople
3. reopened. 4. minds

4. Answer the following questions:

1. This place is a treasure.
2. The townspeople helped to clean and repair the library.
3. Because it will help them work together and it can achieve great things.
4. Because when a community works together, it can achieve great things.
5. Knowledge and learning can open our minds.

General on Exercises

1. Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. T 2. F 3. T
4. F 5. F

2. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. (b) Library
2. (d) windmill
3. (a) letters
4. (b) clogged pipe
5. (c) minds

3. Read and complete the text with words in the box:

1. key 2. maps 3. fountain.
4. plumber 5. library

4. Answer the following questions:

1. We should repair and reopen these places.
2. It is a treasure.

3. Books, letters and maps.
4. With the help of the local plumber.
5. When they fixed the fountain with the help of books.

Student's Book Exercises



Student's
Book

I. Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

1. (b) An old bronze key
2. (c) They fixed the fountain
3. (d) Working together and learning can help the community

II. Answer the following questions:

1. When they fixed the fountain with the help of books. By reading they solved the problem of the fountain.
2. When they fixed the fountain with the help of books. People will also read useful books
3. Because the key didn't only open the library doors but also helped them to discover a treasure of book.

III. Read and write T (True) or F (False):

1. F 2. F 3. T
4. F 5. T

IV. Who said these words?

1. Lara 2. Lara
3. Adam
4. The school principal
5. Adam 6. Fady

Listening Scripts



Test 2 on Unit 1

Last Saturday was an amazing day as Omar went to an art gallery with his family. He saw many colorful paintings and a big wooden sculpture. His sister whispered, "Look at that masterpiece!" Omar felt happy and inspired. Before leaving, they bought postcards from the museum shop to remember their visit. It was an amazing day and they all had fun. Art is amazing and inspiring at the same time.



Test 4 on Unit 2

Ali had a brilliant invention. He designed a robot that could help people at home. First, he drew a blueprint to plan the machine carefully. Then he used gadgets and tools to assemble it. The robot worked with solar power to save energy. Ali wanted to improve it every day, making it faster, smarter, and more useful for everyone.



Test 6 on Unit 3

Wadi El-Hitan, or the Valley of the Whales, lies deep in Egypt's Western Desert. Scientists have discovered many fossils of ancient whales there. These fossils show how whales changed from land animals into ocean creatures. Visitors can walk along the trails and learn about Egypt's rich natural history. The site also has signs that explain the different fossils and the environment millions of years ago. Many people come to see the amazing discoveries.



Review 1 Test 8 on Units 1 - 2 - 3

Tuna el-Gebel, near Minya, is a fascinating ancient burial site that attracts archaeologists and tourists alike. The site has underground chambers and long corridors decorated with

beautiful carvings and colorful scenes. Many mummies of animals, especially birds, have been discovered here. In the middle stands the tomb of Petosiris, a high priest from over two thousand years ago. Walking through Tuna el-Gebel feels like traveling back in time and exploring Egypt's rich history.



Test 10 on Unit 4

New Alamein City is a modern coastal city on Egypt's northern coast. The city has wide roads, green parks, and tall buildings. The city is designed to be a smart place that combines history, beauty, and modern life. It looks like a city of the future. Visitors enjoy peaceful beaches and luxury hotels. Many Egyptians live now in New Alamein City and call it their home.



Test 12 on Unit 5

Giza Station is one of the most modern metro stations in Egypt. At Giza Station, passengers can buy tickets from a ticket machine or pay by card. The metro has smart doors and digital screens. Escalators and elevators make it easy to move between platforms. Announcements give clear information. The trains save electricity and help the environment. Everyone can enjoy faster, cleaner, and safer travel in the city.



Review 2 Test 14 on Units 4 - 5

Egypt has built modern infrastructure to improve daily life. New roads, bridges, and tunnels connect cities, making travel faster and safer. The New Administrative Capital and transport systems boost growth, support the economy, and help people reach work and school more easily.

ENGLISH

6th Prim.
2026

SECOND TERM



**Evaluations, Units Revision,
Exams, & Answers Key**

By a group of specialists

Contents

Pages

Part 1

Revision on Unit (1)

3

Revision on Unit (2)

11

Revision on Unit (3)

18

Revision on Unit (4)

25

Revision on Unit (5)

32

Part 2

Weekly Evaluations

39

Part 3

General Tests

50

Part 4

Listening Scripts

86

Part 5

Answers Key

88

Revision on Unit 1

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Vocabulary)

- A painting on a wall or ceiling is known as a
a) canvas b) sketch c) mural d) frame
- The artist mixed bright red and pale-yellow colors on his before painting.
a) statue b) palette c) canvas d) gallery
- The statue was the artist's best
a) sculpture b) canvas c) mistake d) cloth
- To shape hard material like stone or wood, you must it.
a) whisper b) polish c) paint d) carve
- King Tutankhamun's golden are displayed in the Grand Egyptian Museum.
a) poems b) canvases c) sketches d) treasures
- The ancient Egyptians created beautiful like cups and bowls from clay.
a) pottery b) murals c) sketches d) frames
- The artwork of the wooden horse is called a
a) painting b) canvas c) sculpture d) sketch
- Lily was so She liked the museum a lot.
a) bored b) tired c) excited d) angry
- A person who creates paintings or sculptures, is called a/an
a) visitor b) partner c) hammer d) artist
- Before starting the final masterpiece, the painter drew a quick
a) canvas b) sketch c) sculpture d) vase
- The ability to form new ideas and use imagination is called
a) talent b) skill c) creativity d) pottery
- The surface used by painters, usually stretched cloth, is a
a) palette b) canvas c) pottery d) frame

Revision

- 13.** The building where artwork is displayed for the public to see is an art
 a) temple b) school c) gallery d) playground
- 14.** If you want to speak very quietly, you
 a) shout b) whisper c) talk d) sing
- 15.** The artists keep their tools and materials in a/an
 a) workshop b) university c) history d) surface
- 16.** The beautiful statue of the human head and lion body is called the of Giza.
 a) Frame b) Sphinx c) Mural d) Museum
- 17.** The clay vase had small decorative carved around its middle.
 a) patterns b) hammers c) secrets d) boards
- 18.** We can see a famous painting or a photograph inside a decorative
 a) canvas b) frame c) sketch d) surface
- 19.** A person who has a special ability to do something well is called
 a) bored b) inspired c) talented d) huge
- 20.** After I polished the clay vase, its felt very smooth.
 a) color b) partner c) painting d) surface

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Grammar)

- 1.** I enjoy watching football and basketball on TV.
 a) either b) neither c) both d) so
- 2.** You can visit the museum either today tomorrow.
 a) nor b) or c) and d) as
- 3.** The artist used oil paint watercolor for the portrait.
 a) both... and b) neither... or c) either... nor d) so... both
- 4.** the children their mother were excited about the trip.
 a) Either... or b) Both... and c) Neither... nor d) So... both
- 5.** She found her keys nor her phone, so she was very upset.
 a) both b) either c) or d) neither

6. You can choose the red dress or the blue one for the party.
 a) neither b) both c) either d) so
7. The chef serves neither fish meat in his restaurant.
 a) nor b) and c) or d) both
8. He eats vegetables fruit; he only likes pasta.
 a) both... or b) either... and c) so... both d) neither... nor
9. The library has books magazines.
 a) either... or b) neither... nor c) both... and d) so... either
10. You can write your essay on the computer by hand.
 a) neither... nor b) either... or c) both... and d) nor... either

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. The gallery is showing both the new sculptures (or) the old pottery this month.
2. My friend is both talented at painting (nor) singing.
3. The museum shop sells neither maps (and) postcards.
4. The artist found neither a smooth rock (or) a sharp knife for carving.
5. I like to drink either tea (and) coffee in the morning.
6. The art project requires both colored pencils (or) markers.
7. (Both) the canvas nor the paints were delivered on time.
8. We can watch (neither) a film or a play.

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

carve - canvas - galleries - masterpiece - palette

Ali is a young artist who loves to draw. He likes to visit art ① He sees huge paintings on a ② He likes the beautiful pottery and the wooden statues that artists ③ He sees a huge, bright mural on the wall. It is really a ④ Ali feels so inspired by everything he sees. He wants to be a great artist one day.

5 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

talented - sphinx - statue - painted - paintings

I visited an amazing art exhibition last month. It was about Mahmoud Mokhtar. He made a big ❶ called Nahdit Masr. It shows a woman and a ❷ I cannot imagine how he began to carve this huge masterpiece. I saw the small canvas he ❸ when he was a university student. It was next to both his old palette and a tiny paintbrush. His pottery room was also very interesting. He really was a ❹ artist.

6 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

shape - patterns - base - smooth - proud

Mona made a colorful clay vase. It is tall, with a wide, round ❶ and a narrow top. It is red, blue, and yellow. The surface is ❷ and shiny because she polished it after it dried. There are small ❸ around the middle, which she made using a toothpick. Mona is ❹ of her vase because she worked hard on the design. It took much time to make it special. It's one of her favorite art projects!

7 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. the - People - visit - to - museum - ancient - see - statues.

▶

2. Egypt - history - about - learn - of - the - They.

▶

3. Tutankhamun - can - Visitors - see - the golden - of - mask - King.

▶

4. use - Artists - paintbrush - their - palette - and - colors - to mix.

▶

5. I - had - my - wish - and - palette - paintbrush - I.

▶

8 Punctuate the following:

1. The ancient egyptians built huge temples

▶

2. Do you enjoy sculpture painting, or both

▶

3. first she saw beautiful huge paintings.

▶

4. do you like looking at paintings

▶

5. It's full of color feeling, and imagination

▶

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:



(2Ms)

1. Ziad was bored to visit the new art gallery. (.....)
2. His favorite piece was a colorful mural on the wall. (.....)
3. The artist was mixing colors on his canvas. (.....)
4. Ziad felt inspired by what he saw. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(2Ms)

1. A is a flat board artists use to mix colors on.
a) canvas b) sculpture c) hammer d) palette
2. The Great Sphinx of Giza is an amazing stone that shows skill.
a) pottery b) sculpture c) painting d) frame
3. You can choose either the blue pencil the red one for the sketch.
a) nor b) both c) or d) and
4. I enjoy watching football and basketball on TV.
a) either b) neither c) both d) so

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

whispered - palette - masterpiece - carve - canvas

The art show was full of beautiful things to see. An artist mixed bright colors on his ① and began to paint on a ② A young girl ③ to her friend about a tall sculpture of a king nearby. When the painting was finished, everyone said it was a true ④ It was a wonderful art show.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

(7Ms)

Art is a great way to show creativity and imagination. Some artists prefer to paint pictures on a canvas, using a paintbrush and a palette to mix bright colors. They can use either oil paints or clay to create a unique piece of art. Other artists enjoy making sculptures. They might carve strong shapes out of wood or stone, or use clay to make pottery. In a quiet gallery, visitors can see a wide range of artwork. Some pieces are considered masterpieces that tell stories of history and culture.

A Choose the correct answer:

- The main idea of this text is about
 a) pottery b) sculptures c) types of art d) an art gallery
- The word "bright" in the text means:
 a) heavy b) boring c) colorful d) secret

B Answer the following questions:

- Why is art important?
 ►

- What do artists need to mix colors?
 ►

- Name two ways artists can create sculptures.
 ►

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

- We can travel either by train (and) by bus to the city.
- My brother is neither tall (or) short; he's of medium height.

Test on Unit 1

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2Ms)

1. Both - and - my - sister - painting - love - brother



2. her - displayed - the gallery - in - work - She.



7 Punctuate the following:

(4Ms)

1. Is the sphinx in the egyptian museum



2. I saw a colorful sculpture yesterday



8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

(7Ms)

"The Sphinx"

► huge statue - thousands of years

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Revision on Unit 2

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Vocabulary)

1. A shows how something is built.
a) loom b) blueprint c) fabric d) pendulum
2. An engineer uses a to assemble the small parts of the machine.
a) linen b) fabric c) tool d) loom
3. A is a cool small machine.
a) gadget b) blanket c) workshop d) linen
4. Sami the small parts together to build the model.
a) plays b) sells c) assembles d) throws
5. A person who designs machines is a/an
a) farmer b) worker c) teller d) engineer
6. The ancient Egyptians used the loom to make beautiful
a) statues b) fabrics c) murals d) gears
7. The Nile River caused dangerous before the dam was built.
a) floods b) structures c) supplies d) factories
8. To make something better is to it.
a) improve b) sell c) build d) buy
9. The swings back and forth in a clock.
a) solar b) gear c) loom d) pendulum
10. The invention of the loom was an example of the Egyptian
a) blueprint b) creativity c) gear d) flood
11. My uncle new ideas for better products.
a) listens b) fixes c) innovates d) assembles
12. The new device is a great
a) invention b) assembly c) building d) fabric

13. is white or brown cloth made from the flax plant.

- a) Paper b) Clothes c) Jeans d) Linen

14. To generate electrical power for homes and factories, we need

- a) soil b) energy c) fabric d) flood

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Grammar)

1. The engineer designed the solar robot is very talented.

- a) which b) whose c) who d) where

2. The clock, design was new, became famous.

- a) whose b) which c) who d) that

3. The invention changed how people lived was the clock.

- a) who b) that c) whose d) where

4. The people live around the dam benefit from its energy.

- a) which b) whose c) who d) where

5. The loom, helped people make clothes, was an Egyptian invention.

- a) who b) whose c) where d) which

6. If the door is locked, you must find the key to it.

- a) rewrite b) return c) rebuild d) unlock

7. The teacher asked the student to the paragraph with better handwriting.

- a) unwrite b) rewrite c) unlook d) unbuild

8. The building was finished last year is the new factory.

- a) which b) whose c) where d) who

9. The children, were very excited, watched the robot move.

- a) which b) whose c) who d) where

10. The rule was considered unfair, meaning it was

- a) fair again b) almost fair c) re-applied d) not fair

11. The solar power, makes the robot move, is clean energy.

- a) who b) which c) where d) whose

12. We must glass and plastic to help the environment.
 a) recycle b) cycle c) uncycle d) cycling

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. The engineer, (which) is very talented, designed the solar robot.
2. The loom, (who) was an amazing invention, helped make clothes.
3. It is (resafe) to stand near to the fire.
4. The blueprint is the plan (who) shows how to build the gadget.
5. The clock, (whose) uses a pendulum, tells time accurately.
6. I met the inventor (which) created the first clock model.
7. The worker (who) tools broke stopped working.
8. Please (unturn) the tools to the workshop when you are finished.

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

innovate - generate - structure - engineers - flood

Let's learn about the Aswan Dam. It is a massive ❶ in southern Egypt. It was built by clever ❷ who wanted to protect the land from the annual Nile ❸ The dam, which is made of concrete and stone, now helps to ❹ powerful electricity for homes and factories. It is an amazing modern invention that changed Egypt's future.

5 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

build - model - tool - assemble - fix

A clever engineer worked hard to design a new bicycle. First, he drew a small ❶ of the bike to see all the parts. Then, he used a special tool to ❷ the metal pieces. If a part broke, he knew how to ❸ it quickly. His main goal was to ❹ a bicycle that was strong and safe for everyone to ride every day.

6 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

blueprint - assemble - improve - gadget - create

My older brother wants to be an inventor. He had a great idea for a new electronic ① . The first step was to draw a detailed ② showing the size of every component. After collecting the parts, he started to ③ them using a small tool. He hoped that he could ④ this invention later to make it better. The finished product was amazing.

7 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. dam - How - the - help - does - farmers?

▶

2. first - clock - Clever - the - inventors - built.

▶

3. of - was - full - The - tools - workshop.

▶

4. who - The - smart - designed - the - is - robot - engineer.

▶

5. make - helped - ancient - the - Egyptians - loom - The - clothes.

▶

8 Punctuate the following:

1. what does the young engineer say

▶

2. The aswan Dam is in Egypt

▶

Test on Unit

2

Total

30

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:



(2Ms)

1. The engineer showed them a new kind of machine. (.....)
2. The robot was powered by electricity. (.....)
3. They received a blueprint to assemble a model. (.....)
4. The engineer told them not to change the design. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(2Ms)

1. Ancient Egyptians used the to weave linen into fabric.
a) loom b) gadget c) tool d) gear
2. When you an old house, you build it again from the beginning.
a) unbuild b) unwrite c) rebuild d) return
3. The clock, tells time accurately, has a pendulum.
a) who b) whose c) that d) where
4. The engineer, new idea won the prize, was congratulated.
a) who b) whose c) which d) that

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

blueprint - assemble - invention - gears - tool

For centuries, people searched for ways to tell time accurately. Clever inventors built the first clock. This amazing ① changed how people worked. The clock used small ② to make the hands move. The process needed a good ③ to be followed. The engineer needed a special tool to ④ the tiny pieces inside. The development of the mechanical clock was a huge step forward.

4

Read the text and answer the questions:

(7Ms)

The Aswan Dam is a massive structure in Egypt. It was built by engineers who wanted to stop the annual flood of the Nile. The dam, which is made of concrete, also helps generate huge amounts of clean energy. This energy powers homes and factories. The dam is one of the most important modern machines that has helped the country improve. It holds back water that farmers use to grow crops all year. It is an inspiring example of human creativity and design.

A

Choose the correct answer:

- The text describes the dam as an example of human and design.
a) flood b) linen c) loom d) creativity
- The opposite of the word "modern" is:
a) ancient b) new c) huge d) young

E

Answer the following questions:

- What is the main purpose of the Aswan Dam?

▶

- Name two things the dam helps to provide.

▶

- Give a suitable title for the text.

▶

5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

(4Ms)

- The box was open, so the package was (resafe).
- The worker (who) new invention won the contest, was famous.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2Ms)

1. the - engineer - clever - designed - solar - robot - The.

▶

2. is - a gadget - fun - to - play - with - It.

▶

7 Punctuate the following:

(4Ms)

1. the workshop was full of tools

▶

2. did the engineer fix the machine

▶

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

(7Ms)

"My New Invention"

▶ smart car - blueprint

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Revision on Unit 3

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Vocabulary)

1. A is the place where ancient people or animals were buried.
a) temple b) model c) burial site d) gadget
2. The preserved remains of an ancient animal or plant are called
a) looms b) tools c) fabrics d) fossils
3. The ancient Egyptians used special methods to the bodies of the dead.
a) innovate b) preserve c) improve d) assemble
4. A is a structure where a high priest or king is buried.
a) tomb b) blueprint c) corridor d) workshop
5. The Temple of Dakka was moved and carefully stone by stone.
a) destroyed b) restored c) carved d) flooded
6. The are the skilled workers who designed and painted the tombs.
a) priests b) archaeologists
c) craftsmen d) farmers
7. The long passage in a pyramid or temple is called a
a) tomb b) corridor c) mummy d) skeleton
8. The traditions and culture that belong to a country are its rich
a) structure b) heritage c) model d) machine
9. A/An studies the past by looking at old sites.
a) engineer b) inventor c) craftsman d) archaeologist
10. The Valley of the Whales (Wadi EL-Hitan) was once covered by a huge
a) chamber b) ocean c) factory d) river
11. is the beautiful art made by cutting designs into stone or wood.
a) Assembly b) Carving c) Innovation d) Creativity

12. The word that means "having a secret or being strange" is
 a) famous b) modern c) traditional d) mysterious
13. The tomb walls were covered with paintings and
 a) machines b) structures c) carvings d) gadgets
14. The is the framework of bones inside the body.
 a) mummy b) fossil c) skeleton d) pendulum

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Grammar)

1. They already finished exploring the burial site.
 a) has b) have c) are d) do
2. I never been to Tuna el-Gebel before.
 a) am b) has c) was d) have
3. you ever seen a fossil of a whale?
 a) Did b) Does c) Are d) Have
4. The tomb of Petosiris stood for thousands of years.
 a) has b) is c) have d) was
5. The workers found the lost chamber yet.
 a) didn't b) haven't c) hasn't d) aren't
6. My mother just come back from her trip to Minya.
 a) did b) is c) has d) were
7. She not visited the Valley of the Whales yet.
 a) did b) have c) has d) is
8. The craftsmen their homes beautifully.
 a) has decorated b) decorated c) have decorated d) decoration

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. The workers (has) painted the walls of the corridor.
2. I (already eat) my lunch, so I am not hungry.
3. The tomb (have stood) for two thousand years near Minya.
4. Have you (ever see) a whale fossil?
5. Ali has just (eat) his lunch.

Revision

6. Have you (finishing) your homework?
7. Where has Ahmed (be)?
8. Have they (arrives) yet?

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

mummies - preserve - carvings - ancient - corridor

Tuna el-Gebel is a mysterious burial site. Researchers discovered many exciting things, including hundreds of animals ① The mystery of how Egyptians managed to ② these animals still fascinates people. Walking through the long ③ and looking at the beautiful ④ on the walls feels like traveling back in time. It is an unforgettable place.

5 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

skeletons - ocean - heritage - discovered - temple

Deep in the Western Desert lies Wadi El-Hitan. Millions of years ago, this area was covered by a very big ① Archaeologists have ② hundreds of whale fossils here. Some of these ③ are longer than 15 meters! This site has scientific and historical importance, showing Egypt's rich natural ④

6 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

gadget - blueprint - assemble - improve - create

Egypt has many magnificent sites. Deir el-Medina is an ancient village in Luxor. It was home to the ① who built the royal tombs. They left drawings and notes on pottery. The ② of Dakka in Nubia also shows Egypt's proud history. When the Nile water level rose, experts worked to ③ the monument. Seeing these sites makes Egyptians proud of their country's wonderful ④

7 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. Have - the - you - tombs - visited - ancient?

▶ ?

2. for - stood - The - temple - years - thousands - has-of.

▶

3. discovered - archaeologist - new - The - chambers - just - has.

▶

4. protected - heritage - Egypt - has - rich - its.

▶

5. The - Valley - Whales - is - amazing - of.

▶

8 Punctuate the following:

1. the workers have restored the temple

▶

2. has the tour guide arrived yet

▶

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(2Ms)

1. Tuna el-Gebel is a new city near Cairo. (.....)
2. Petosiris's tomb shows a mix of two ancient cultures. (.....)
3. Researchers have only found human mummies in the area. (.....)
4. Visitors are fascinated by how the animals were preserved. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(2Ms)

1. The Temple of Dakka has been carefully after the Nile water rose.
a) flooded b) destroyed c) restored d) invented
2. The remains of ancient animals found in Wadi El-Hitan are called
a) gadgets b) textiles c) monuments d) fossils
3. Archaeologists discovered many drawings in Deir el-Medina.
a) are b) has c) have d) do
4. She been to the Valley of the Whales yet.
a) haven't b) doesn't c) hasn't d) isn't

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

corridor - mummy - preserved - craftsmen - restore

Last week I was in Luxor and visited Deir el-Medina. It was home to the skilled ① These workers have painted beautiful scenes inside the royal tombs. Their village helps us understand how the Egyptians lived. In ancient tombs, bodies were carefully ② to create a ③ Walking along the long underground ④ is like traveling back in time. Experts still need to restore some parts of the burial site.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

(7Ms)

Wadi El-Hitan, or the Valley of the Whales, is one of Egypt's most fascinating sites. Millions of years ago, this desert area was covered by a huge ocean. Archaeologists have discovered hundreds of fossils of ancient whales, some longer than 15 meters. These fossils are unique because they show how whales changed from land animals into the large ocean creatures we know today. Because of this amazing scientific history, Wadi El-Hitan has become a World Heritage site. Egypt has protected this area carefully to preserve the skeletons for future generations. Visitors can walk along the desert trails and feel like they have traveled back millions of years.

A Choose the correct answer:

1. The word 'fascinating' means:

- a) boring b) interesting c) ancient d) dangerous

2. The fossils are unique because they show how:

- a) archaeologists work b) whales changed
c) the ocean was d) Egypt changed

B Answer the following questions:

3. How was the desert millions of years ago?

▶

4. Why has Egypt protected this area carefully?

▶

5. Give a suitable title for the text.

▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

(4Ms)

1. My brother (not/visit) the Temple of Dakka since he was ten.

Test on Unit 3

2. The scientist, (who) discovery won the award, is very famous.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2Ms)

1. the - Have - chambers - finished - exploring - they - yet?

►

2. desert - whale - fossils - in - are - Egypt's - There.

►

7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. have you ever seen ancient tombs

►

2. we have just restored the temple

►

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below: (7Ms)

"An Ancient Egyptian Site I Want to Visit"

► What site is it and what amazing thing can you see?

► What has modern Egypt done to protect its heritage?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Revision on Unit 4

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Vocabulary)

1. Modern projects help Egypt improve transportation and daily life.
a) heritage b) infrastructure c) fabrics d) fossils
2. Engineers are building new to connect different parts of the country.
a) corridors b) bridges c) carvings d) tombs
3. Solar and wind power are examples of clean
a) energy b) machines c) factories d) models
4. Egypt's industries help the country become more
a) narrow b) mysterious c) self-reliant d) crowded
5. The textile produces clothes and fabrics.
a) corridor b) industry c) chamber d) workshop
6. New Alamein City is a modern coastal
a) road b) system c) city d) temple
7. Factories help many Egyptian products such as pasta and juice.
a) preserve b) manufacture c) carve d) decorate
8. Engineers work in modern that use clean energy.
a) villages b) facilities c) temples d) corridors
9. Wide roads and green parks are part of the city's
a) heritage b) power c) landscape d) skeleton
10. Egypt's new projects show the country's to grow and develop.
a) determination b) corridor c) skeleton d) mystery
11. Wind and solar power are used to clean electricity.
a) create b) lighten c) widen d) shorten
12. New bridges in Cairo help reduce roads and heavy traffic.
a) spacious b) modern c) crowded d) clean

Revision

- 13.** work to plan and build Egypt's new highways and tunnels.
a) Engineers b) Craftsmen
c) Archaeologists d) Priests
- 14.** The prefix en- in "enlarge" means
a) to make bigger b) to cut designs
c) to preserve d) to travel

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Grammar)

1. In the past, people depend mainly on farming.
a) used to b) use to c) didn't used to d) are used to
2. Villages have factories or machines long ago.
a) use to b) didn't use to c) don't d) were
3. people use to buy most products from other countries?
a) Do b) Are c) Did d) Does
4. Cities today have modern roads, but they have narrow, crowded ones.
a) used to b) are used to c) use to d) are
5. Engineers work with solar power in the past.
a) didn't use to b) use to c) doesn't d) aren't
6. factories use to be rare in Egyptian villages?
a) Does b) Did c) Are d) Was
7. Egypt build modern bridges like the ones today.
a) isn't b) didn't use to c) didn't used to d) wasn't
8. We get many products from other countries, but now we make them here.
a) didn't used to b) used to c) don't d) haven't

 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. My grandparents (used not) study with computers.
2. People (not/use) to travel easily between cities.
3. In the past, we (use) walk long distances to school.
4. Did factories (used) to be in villages?
5. The city (not uses) have large factories in the past.

6. We (use) buy products from abroad. Now we don't.
 7. Workers (not used) modern machines 100 years ago.
 8. Did your grandmother (used) have a smart phone?

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

energy - infrastructure - textile - engineers - connected

Egypt is becoming one of the strongest countries in Africa and the Middle East. It has invested a lot in modern ① to improve daily life. Skilled ② are building new highways that make travel easier and faster. These projects help the country stay ③ and allow goods to move quickly. Clean ④ such as solar and wind power are also being used.

5 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

innovation - machines - products - factories - self-reliant

Today, Egypt has changed greatly. Egypt now has many modern ① that produce high-quality goods. In the past, people didn't use to have ② to make things quickly. Today, Egyptian ③ such as pasta and clothes are sold inside and outside the country. This growth in industry helps Egypt become more ④

6 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

coastal - history - future - progress - modern

Last week, we visited New Alamein City. It is a ① city on the Mediterranean Sea. It has ② buildings, wide roads, and beautiful walkways. Many visitors enjoy its beaches and parks. The city shows Egypt's ③ and reflects the country's long ④ New Alamein reflects Egypt's vision for progress, showing how innovation and planning can turn the desert into a modern city.

Revision

7 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. used - People - farming - on - depend - to - mainly.

▶

2. have - engineers - built - bridges - Modern - new.

▶

3. didn't - There - use - factories - be - to - many.

▶

4. energy - Solar - clean - are - and - wind.

▶

5. Temple - Luxor - ancient - is - complex - a magnificent.

▶

8 Punctuate the following:

1. egypt has built many new highways in recent years

▶

2. did people use to depend mainly on farming

▶

Test on Unit

4

Total

30

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(2Ms)

1. In the past, Egyptian roads were wide and easy to travel on. (.....)
2. Engineers have worked on clean energy projects. (.....)
3. Trips used to take a short time between cities. (.....)
4. The New Administrative Capital has modern buildings and green areas. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(2Ms)

1. Engineers are building new to connect Egyptian cities.
a) fossils b) highways c) fabrics d) temples
2. Egypt depend mainly on farming in the past.
a) used to b) uses to c) is used to d) was used to
3. New power sources such as wind and solar energy clean electricity.
a) carve b) create c) widen d) shorten
4. The textile is an important part of Egypt's modern economy.
a) corridor b) heritage c) industry d) landscape

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

connected - engineers - steel - bridges - develop

I'm proud to be Egyptian. Egypt continues to ① new projects to improve daily life. Skilled ② are building modern roads and ③ in many cities. These projects help make the country more ④ and easier to travel across. Clean energy such as solar and wind power also supports Egypt's future to become more self-reliant.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

(7Ms)

New Alamein City is one of Egypt's newest modern cities. It lies on the beautiful northern coast, where the Mediterranean Sea meets golden sandy beaches. The city has tall glass buildings, wide roads, green parks, and cultural areas. It also includes universities, hotels, and shopping centers. Engineers have worked hard to design the city in a smart and modern way. New Alamein helps attract tourists and gives many Egyptians new job opportunities. It reflects Egypt's vision for progress, showing how innovation and planning can turn the desert into a modern, lively city full of life.

A Choose the correct answer:

- New Alamein City is located on the
 - Red Sea
 - Nile River
 - northern coast
 - western desert
- The city is a symbol of Egypt's
 - ancient history
 - progress
 - farming
 - problems

B Answer the following questions:

- ### 3. What features can visitors find in New Alamein City?

- #### 4. Why does New Alamein attract tourists?

- ### 5. What does New Alamein represent for Egypt?

.....

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. People (not/use) to travel easily between cities.
2. Engineers will (enlargen) the road to reduce traffic.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2Ms)

1. used - products - many - import - Egypt - to.

▶

2. The - buildings - modern - has - capital - new.

▶

7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. egypt is becoming more self-reliant

▶

2. did the engineers build new bridges

▶

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below: (7Ms)

"A Modern Egyptian Project"

- ▶ What has Egypt done to improve it?
- ▶ How does this project help people today?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

1 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Vocabulary)

1. The metro uses lights that save electricity.
a) ancient b) LED c) broken d) digital
2. A runs on a single track above the ground.
a) corridor b) tram c) tunnel d) monorail
3. The electric bus helps the because it makes no smoke.
a) environment b) station c) machine d) escalator
4. The metro has smart that open and close automatically.
a) wheels b) doors c) corridors d) controls
5. Passengers will hear clear in Arabic and English.
a) carvings b) lessons c) fossils d) announcements
6. Renewable comes from natural sources like sun and wind.
a) energy b) electricity c) fuel d) metal
7. Some cars today are, meaning they can move without a driver.
a) slow-moving b) crowded c) underground d) self-driving
8. Ticket help passengers buy tickets easily.
a) machines b) steps c) cords d) platforms
9. The new metro system is faster, cleaner, and
a) more crowded b) more mysterious
c) smarter d) darker
10. Electric buses and trains are because they help reduce pollution.
a) eco-friendly b) noisy c) traditional d) dangerous
11. Digital show the next station and the time.
a) skeletons b) screens c) wheels d) factories
12. Passengers mustn't the doors.
a) block b) ride c) open d) station

13. Escalators and help people move easily inside stations.

- a) elevators b) mummies c) fossils d) wires

14. Self-driving cars use and computers to move safely.

- a) cameras b) fossils c) ropes d) corridors

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d: (Grammar)

1. If you take the electric bus, you travel without smoke.

- a) will b) are c) did d) do

2. If passengers block the doors, the train stop.

- a) didn't b) won't c) will d) was

3. The world will be cleaner if people eco-friendly transport.

- a) use b) used c) using d) will use

4. If the monorail continues to grow, the city cleaner.

- a) becomes b) became c) becoming d) will become

5. If you forget your card, you buy a ticket from the machine.

- a) will b) are c) did d) does

6. If cars are self-driving, they avoid accidents.

- a) have b) are c) didn't d) will

7. People stay safe if they sit or stand properly.

- a) did b) do c) are d) will

8. If we use renewable energy, the air be cleaner.

- a) will b) is c) was d) did

3 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1. If Sami (forgot) his cards, he will buy a ticket at the machine.

2. If the metro (be) crowded, we will wait.

3. If passengers open the smart doors, the train (not start).

4. If you (taking) the monorail, you will arrive faster.

5. The bus (have) LED lights and smart doors.

6. If cars (becomes) self-driving, travel will be safer.

7. People (be) able to pay by card or phone.

8. If we (not/use) clean energy, pollution will increase.

4 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

screens - monorail - connect - escalators - announcements

Egypt has developed new transportation systems. The new ① will help people travel faster across Cairo and Giza. At each station, passengers can use digital ② to see the next stop and the time. They will also hear clear ③ in Arabic and English. People can use elevators and ④ for easy access. The system saves electricity and helps the environment.

5 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

eco-friendly - avoid - future - protect - computers

In the future, people will travel in smarter and cleaner ways. Some cars today are self-driving. They cars use cameras and ① to move safely on the road without a driver. They can stop at red lights, slow down for people on foot, and ② accidents. They are ③ because they make less noise and pollution. Together, we can help reduce pollution and ④ Earth for future generations.

6 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

planet - smoke- comfortable - fuel - transport

Many new vehicles are becoming eco-friendly, which means they do not harm the environment. For example, electric buses and trains use less ① and make less noise. The electric bus helps keep the air clean because it makes no ② Passengers enjoy a safe and ③ trip with smart doors and LED lights. These buses save electricity and help Egypt build modern and green ④ systems.

7 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. cleaner - will - be - environment - the - If - use - we - energy - renewable.

▶

2. card - forget - buy - your - will - If - you - a ticket.

▶

3. train's - the - mustn't - doors - Passengers - block.

▶

4. faster - monorail - The - will - you - help - travel.

▶

5. safely - Cameras - drive - cars - self-driving - help.

▶

8 Punctuate the following:

1. if you take the metro you will arrive quickly.

▶

2. does the monorail have digital screens

▶

نص الاستماع موجود آخر الملحق.

1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:



(2Ms)

1. The metro uses LED lights to save electricity. ()
2. There are no elevators or escalators in the new stations. ()
3. The metro is cleaner and faster for passengers. ()
4. If more people use the metro, the streets will be more crowded. ()

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(2Ms)

1. The electric bus helps the because it makes no smoke.
a) corridor b) environment c) announcement d) engine
2. A runs on one track above the ground.
a) tunnel b) monorail c) workshop d) river
3. If people use renewable energy, the air be cleaner.
a) will b) does c) did d) is
4. If passengers block the doors, the train stop.
a) didn't b) won't c) will d) was

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

LED-digital - automatically - passengers - escalators

I go to work by metro every day. The new metro is safer and cleaner for
 ① Inside the train, big ② screens show the next
 station and the time. The stations have elevators and ③ to
 help people move easily. The metro saves electricity because it uses smart
 ④ lights. This makes the metro better for the environment.

4 Read the text and answer the questions: (7Ms)

Electric buses are becoming more popular in Egypt because they offer a cleaner and smarter way to travel. These buses run on electricity, so they make no smoke and help keep the air fresh and clean for everyone. They also make less noise than normal buses, which makes cities quieter. Inside the bus, passengers can see bright LED lights and smart doors that open automatically. People can pay for their tickets by card or phone. If more people use electric buses, the environment will improve and the streets will become much less polluted.

A Choose the correct answer:

- Electric buses help
 a) make smoke b) clean the air c) make noise d) block doors
- People can pay by
 a) cash only b) animals c) card or phone d) nothing

B Answer the following questions:

- Why are electric buses better for the environment?

▶

- What will happen if more people use electric buses?

▶

- What is a suitable title for the text

▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

- If you (standing) near the doors, they will not open.
- If the metro (be) crowded, we will wait.

Test on Unit 5

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2Ms)

1. new - doors - smart - have - The - trains.

▶

2. arrive - you - faster - monorail - will - the - If - take - you.

▶

7 Punctuate the following:

(4Ms)

1. does the metro have digital screens

▶

2. if everyone uses eco-friendly transport the planet will be cleaner

▶

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

(7Ms)

"Egypt's Future Transportation"

▶ What smart transportation will Egypt have?

▶ How will it help the environment?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Part 2

Weekly Evaluations

Week1: Based on Unit1



Choose the correct answer:

1. During the quiet tour, Sara to her friend so she wouldn't annoy the visitors.
a) shouted b) whispered c) sang d) laughed
2. The artist worked for years on his drawing, and everyone agreed it was a true
a) mistake b) photo c) masterpiece d) copy
3. Before starting her artwork, Nora placed all her paints neatly on her
a) plane b) brush c) paper d) palette
4. To shape the statue's details, the man carefully used a small
a) brush b) knife c) pen d) ruler
5. In the museum, Hana admired a tall stone that looked like an ancient warrior.
a) sculpture b) painting c) frame d) mural
6. Neither Tuesday Thursday is available for the art class.
a) and b) or c) nor d) both
7. You can use a marker or crayons to complete your drawing.
a) neither b) either c) both d) so
8. Rania used both a sketch a canvas to complete her artwork.
a) nor b) and c) or d) both
9. Both the artist the designer enjoyed presenting their pieces.
a) nor b) and c) or d) so
10. You can display either a painting a mural at the show.
a) nor b) both c) and d) or

Week2: Based on Unit1



Choose the correct answer:

1. This student is very ; she learns new art skills quickly.
a) tiny b) talented c) huge d) pottery
2. The gallery showed a/an mural that covered the entire entrance.
a) incredible b) sphinx c) sketch d) clay
3. Omar drew a simple of the building he wanted to design.
a) painter b) art exhibition c) incredible d) sketch
4. The class took a trip to a/an where they viewed paintings from around the world.
a) sketch b) incredible c) art exhibition d) pottery
5. The statue was so that it fit inside a small box.
a) huge b) hug c) talented d) tiny
6. Visitors admire both the portraits sculptures in the museum.
a) nor b) and c) or d) both
7. Both the artist the designer enjoyed presenting their pieces.
a) and b) nor c) or d) so
8. You can create either a collage a digital sketch for your project.
a) nor b) or c) and d) both
9. The studio was filled with both excitement imagination.
a) nor b) or c) and d) both
10. Neither fog rain appears during the summer festival.
a) nor b) or c) and d) both

Week3: Based on Unit2



Choose the correct answer:

1. Engineers always their machines to make them safer and faster.
a) ignore b) improve c) follow d) replace

2. A young engineer who is very solved complex problems quickly.
 a) musical b) solar c) expensive d) talented
3. You should always a device before selling it to ensure it is safe to use.
 a) ignore b) test c) improve d) create
4. A microscope is a tool that helps scientists see tiny objects clearly.
 a) musical b) helpless c) useful d) useless
5. My brother the parts of the new robot carefully to make sure it worked.
 a) assembled b) invented c) ignored d) innovated
6. The woman laptop broke bought a new one today.
 a) which b) who c) whom d) whose
7. The cat sleeps on the balcony every afternoon belongs to my neighbor.
 a) who b) that c) whose d) whom
8. The doctor treated my brother explained everything clearly.
 a) who b) whom c) whose d) which
9. The student project won first place studied very hard.
 a) who b) whose c) whom d) which
10. The photographer photos were displayed won the competition.
 a) who b) whom c) whose d) which

Week4: Based on Unit2

Choose the correct answer:

1. Solar panels help energy for schools and hospitals.
 a) block b) generate c) fix d) stop
2. Before starting the project, the architect created a detailed
 a) design b) flood c) river d) future
3. A is often used in factories to weave different kinds of cloth.
 a) loom b) basket c) furniture d) jewelry

Revision

4. The craftsman created a chair using strong pieces to make it last longer.
a) linen b) wooden c) jewelry d) colorful
5. Linen is a soft and durable type of commonly found in summer clothing.
a) paper b) wood c) fabric d) loom
6. The singer performed on stage yesterday is becoming very famous.
a) who b) whom c) whose d) which
7. The book I lent you last week is on the bestseller list.
a) who b) whom c) which d) whose
8. The tower overlooks the whole city is a popular tourist spot.
a) that b) who c) whose d) whom
9. The scientist research changed modern medicine visited our school.
a) which b) who c) whom d) whose
10. The message you received yesterday was very important.
a) which b) whose c) who d) whom

Week5: Based on Unit3



Choose the correct answer:

1. My father is a/an He studies old buildings and historical objects.
a) artist b) archaeologist c) visitor d) teacher
2. A/An is a preserved body from ancient times.
a) priest b) animal c) bird d) mummy
3. A is a small room inside a pyramid.
a) corridor b) museum c) chamber d) site
4. Archaeologists found many animals in the tombs.
a) living b) wild c) mummified d) friendly
5. Saqqara is a site that attracts many tourists.
a) mysterious b) tired c) boring d) noisy

6. She in this company since 2015.
a) work b) has worked c) working d) works
7. They in London for many years.
a) lives b) have lived c) are living d) living
8. I my laptop for almost five years.
a) have had b) had c) am having d) have
9. He music since he was eight years old.
a) studied b) studies c) has studied d) is studying
10. My sister that book for two days nonstop.
a) have played b) has played c) is playing d) plays

Week 6: Based on Unit 3

Choose the correct answer:

1. A person who explains the history of a site to visitors is a
a) tourist b) traveler c) tour guide d) artist
2. The builders worked to make the palace walls perfect.
a) skillfully b) carelessly c) slowly d) loudly
3. A person who creates plans for houses and bridges is a/an
a) engineer b) archaeologist c) craftsman d) baker
4. People used paint, fabric, and wood to their rooms beautifully.
a) keep b) reach c) decorate d) think
5. Egypt preserves this site so that the ancient fossils safe in the future.
a) create b) remain c) change d) bring
6. Have you your breakfast yet?
a) eat b) eaten c) eat d) eats
7. He his wrist, so he can't lift anything heavy.
a) injures b) have injured c) has injured d) is injuring
8. I my room, so it looks tidy now.
a) has washed b) wash c) have washed d) washing
9. Someone has the door. It's wide open now.
a) opened b) opens c) open d) is opening

Revision

10. Have you ever to Japan?
a) go b) gone c) went d) goes

Week7: Based on Unit4

Choose the correct answer:

- Engineers are designing a new to improve transportation.
a) painting b) highway c) market d) recipe
- The government is improving the country's by building modern facilities.
a) sports b) infrastructure c) nature d) energy
- The country continues to show great through modern inventions.
a) innovation b) pollution c) celebration d) imagination
- The new teaching method is very and helps students understand faster.
a) difficult b) effective c) crowded d) slow
- The country's is improving thanks to new investments and projects.
a) color b) climate c) economy d) festival
- In the past, people live in small villages.
a) use to b) used to c) using to d) uses to
- My grandfather work in a factory. He worked on a farm.
a) not use to b) don't use to c) didn't use to d) didn't used to
- people travel by camels in the desert before cars existed?
a) Are b) Did c) Does d) Do
- Did your grandparents to make their own clothes?
a) uses b) used c) use d) using
- your sister use to travel by horse?
a) Do b) Does c) Did d) Are

Week8: Based on Unit4

Choose the correct answer:

- I bought fresh bread from the nearby this morning.
a) shop b) high-quality c) produce d) machine

2. The coach tried to the team before the final match.
a) courage b) encouraged c) encourage d) encouraging
3. Sharm El-Sheikh is one of Egypt's famous
a) malls b) pharaohs c) universities d) coastal cities
4. The new developments show Egypt's for progress.
a) farming b) past c) vision d) ruins
5. The city offers hotels for tourists to stay in comfort.
a) empty b) awful c) broken d) luxury
6. Downtown Cairo has many where people can shop for clothes and electronics.
a) gates b) shopping centers c) statues d) desert
7. Children play outside more often before smartphones existed.
a) use to b) didn't use to c) did use to d) uses to
8. Did people travel by horse before cars were invented?
a) used to b) use to c) using to d) uses to
9. My father work in an office. He worked on a farm instead.
a) not use to b) don't use to c) didn't use to d) didn't used to
10. Did your parents to grow their own vegetables at home?
a) uses b) used c) use d) using

Week9: Based on Unit5

Choose the correct answer:

1. Cars that run on petrol are for the planet than electric cars.
a) better b) worse c) cleaner d) smarter
2. We should pollution to keep the Earth healthy.
a) keep b) have c) support d) reduce
3. Using eco-friendly vehicles helps protect the
a) fuel b) money c) environment d) accidents
4. Public transport saves because it reduces traffic.
a) air b) time c) toys d) streets
5. If it tomorrow, we'll take umbrellas.
a) rains b) rained c) raining d) rain
6. She will succeed in the test if she regularly.
a) study b) studied c) studies d) studying

Revision

7. If we now, we can catch the first bus.
a) leave b) left c) leaving d) leaves
8. If the weather cold, we'll wear our coats.
a) being b) was c) were d) is
9. If he his homework, he will get a good grade.
a) do b) did c) does d) doing
10. I you if you ask me.
a) helps b) helped c) help d) will help

Week10: Based on Unit5

Choose the correct answer:

1. Egypt's future transportation is expected to be and safer.
a) dirty b) cleaner c) heavy d) old
2. Using renewable energy will help keep the city air
a) dirty b) fresh c) polluted d) hot
3. Passengers must in cars to avoid accidents.
a) sleep b) talk c) wear seat belts d) eat
4. Streets will be because of eco-friendly vehicles.
a) more crowded b) quieter c) dirty d) broken
5. Passengers can wait at the for their train.
a) platform b) window c) restaurant d) pavement
6. They will be late if they a taxi now.
a) takes b) didn't take c) not take d) don't take
7. If we quietly, we won't wake the baby.
a) move b) moved c) moves d) moving
8. I will help you if you me your problem.
a) tells b) told c) tell d) telling
9. If it cold tonight, we will stay at home.
a) is b) was c) were d) being
10. She will be happy if you her a birthday card.
a) sends b) sent c) send d) sending

Week11: General

Choose the correct answer:

- The famous old painting was considered a true because of the artist's great skill.
a) gallery b) frame c) masterpiece d) secret
- A is a machine designed to perform tasks automatically.
a) loom b) pendulum c) gear d) robot
- The project showed Egypt's great and its pride in the future.
a) pharaohs b) progress c) farming d) tunnel
- When people use buses and trains instead of, fewer vehicles are on the road.
a) trains b) private cars c) tracks d) monorails
- The electric bus runs entirely on
a) fuel b) solar power c) electricity d) diesel
- Both painting sculpture show talent and imagination.
a) nor b) or c) but d) and
- The boy bike is red is my brother.
a) who b) whose c) which d) that
- We will miss the train if we fast.
a) didn't walk b) aren't walk c) won't walk d) don't walk
- My grandparents used to in a small village when they were young.
a) lives b) lived c) live d) living
- If he saves his money, he a new electric scooter.
a) bought b) will buy c) buys d) would buy

Week12: General

Choose the correct answer:

- The surface an artist paints on is called a
a) palette b) frame c) canvas d) pottery
- An engineer drew a to show the design of the new machine.
a) fabric b) blueprint c) loom d) furniture

Revision

3. The company produces high-quality for sale.
a) zones b) changes c) goods d) panels
4. The new runs above the ground on a single track.
a) bus b) train c) monorail d) tram
5. Using public transportation is better for the planet because it helps reduce
a) people b) air pollution c) speed d) electricity
6. You can hang either a painting a photo inside the frame.
a) nor b) or c) and d) so
7. The man is teaching us English is very kind.
a) which b) whose c) who d) that
8. If it tomorrow, we will stay at home.
a) rained b) raining c) rains d) rain
9. People depend on farming in the past.
a) is used to b) didn't used to c) used to d) use to
10. If you use a ticket machine, you your time.
a) saved b) will saving c) will save d) saving

Week 13: General

Choose the correct answer:

1. The young scientist is very; she quickly solves new experiments.
a) talented b) tiny c) huge d) weak
2. A microscope is a tool that helps scientists study tiny objects.
a) harmful b) useless c) musical d) useful
3. Before painting, the artist organized her brushes and paints on a
a) palette b) canvas c) frame d) paper
4. The museum displayed a beautiful carved from wood.
a) painting b) sketch c) sculpture d) mural
5. Engineers always their machines to make them faster and safer.
a) improve b) ignore c) replace d) break
6. Visitors admire both the paintings sculptures in the gallery.
a) or b) and c) nor d) but

7. She in this school since 2017.
a) studies b) studied c) is studying d) has studied
8. I my room, so it looks tidy now.
a) have cleaned b) clean c) has cleaned d) cleaning
9. Did your parents to grow vegetables at home?
a) uses b) used c) use d) using
10. If it tomorrow, we'll carry umbrellas.
a) rains b) rained c) rain d) raining

Week14: General

Choose the correct answer:

1. Have you ever to London?
a) gone b) went c) go d) goes
2. Builders worked to make the palace perfect.
a) carelessly b) slowly c) loudly d) skillfully
3. Solar panels help electricity for homes.
a) generate b) block c) stop d) fix
4. If he his homework, he will get a good grade.
a) doing b) did c) do d) does
5. The tiny statue is so that it fits in the palm of your hand.
a) fragile b) huge c) small d) talented
6. The children play outside more often before smartphones existed.
a) didn't used to b) use to c) did use to d) used to
7. The craftsman built a chair from strong pieces.
a) wooden b) fabric c) plastic d) paper
8. My sister that book for three days straight.
a) has read b) read c) reads d) is reading
9. Neither the morning the afternoon classes are canceled today.
a) or b) and c) nor d) both
10. Have you your homework?
a) done b) do c) did d) doing

Marks: 60

Al-Azhar Test

1

1 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

(10Ms)

powerful - paintbrush - pottery - statue - canvas - weak

Ali : Where did you go yesterday?

Ahmed : I went to the art gallery.

Ali : What did you do there?

Ahmed : First, we saw huge paintings on ① I wished I had my ② and palette with me.

Ali : Did you see any ③ that made of clay?

Ahmed : Yes, and I saw giant ④ that an artist used to carve. It looked so strong and ⑤

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

(10Ms)

1. You can use (neither) a password or a pattern to lock your mobile.

2. The student (which) made the project is clever.

3. The lesson is difficult, can you (simply) it to me?

4. She (use) wear a skirt when she was younger.

5. If he wakes up early, he (catch) the bus.

3 Choose the correct answer:

(10Ms)

1. We should use transportation that is (harmful - bad - eco-friendly) to keep the environment clean.

2. (Do - Did - Does) you use to sleep early when you were little?
3. Farmers works in (fields - offices - schools) to take care of plants.
4. I (hadn't - hasn't - haven't) done my work yet.
5. The Aswan Dam can (supply - take -read) Egypt with clean electricity.
6. This is the boy (who - whose - where) bag is blue.
7. Your handwriting is too messy, you should (sleep - write - rewrite) the paragraph.
8. Robots are very useful (inventions - games - art).
9. (Either - Both - Neither) my sister and my friend like paintings.
10. If Menna (is - are - was) free, we will go out together.

4 Read and circle the odd one out, and replace it with a correct one:

(10Ms)

1. pottery - paintings - drawing - sleeping
2. train - fabric - linen - cotton
3. encourage - enable - swim - ensure
4. wide - tall - play - golden
5. electric bus - monorail - electric car - people

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:(10Ms)

My father is a talented engineer who always creates new inventions. Last month, he designed a robot that waters plants automatically. First, he assembled the small parts using the right tools. The robot ran on solar power, so the wheels moved when he placed it in the sun. He used solar power, so this invention is considered an eco-friendly device. Also, if something isn't working, he can easily improve it. This invention is a fun, useful way to water plants, especially for home gardens.

General Tests

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. The father is a talented doctor. (.....)
2. Last month, he designed a robot. (.....)
3. This invention is considered an eco-friendly device. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

4. The robot used for (watering - cutting - picking) plants.
5. If something isn't working, he can easily (cancel - improve - read) it.

6 Write a paragraph of (5) sentences words using the following guiding elements: (10Ms)

"A visit to Aswan Dam"

► electricity - structure - supply

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

Marks: 60

Al-Azhar Test

2

1 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

(10Ms)

incredible - sketch - talented - statue - exhibition - boring

Asser : Do you remember that amazing art ① we visited last month?

Adam : Yes, it was about a truly ② Egyptian artist.

Asser : His name is Mahmoud Mokhtar. He made a big ③ called Nahdit Masr.

Adam : I know! The sculpture was absolutely ④

Asser : Can you imagine that I saw his first ⑤ for it.

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

(10Ms)

1. The game (who) played yesterday was fun.

2. Neither Ali (or) Rana likes playing tennis.

3. My mother used to (sings) when she was 12.

4. If you focus with the teacher, you (understand) the lesson.

5. Have you ever (eat) sushi?

3 Choose the correct answer:

(10Ms)

1. I went to the Pyramids of Giza and saw the (Sphinx - tower - beach)

2. She is the woman (which - who - whose) house is near to ours.

3. We use a ruler to (clean - find - measure) the length of our table.

4. If it (rain - rains - rained) a lot, we will stay at home.

General Tests

5. (Archeologists - Doctors - Dentists) study history and ancient objects.
6. They have just (draw - drawn - drew) their paintings.
7. We went inside the ancient tomb to explore the (kitchen - chamber - corridor)
8. We should use (bad - toxic - renewable) energy to protect our environment.
9. I like (either - neither - both) fruit or vegetables.
10. I didn't (used - using - use) to go to gym last year.

4 Read and circle the odd one out, and replace it with a correct one:

(10Ms)

1. solar energy - electricity - power supplies - boards
2. elevator - stairs - escalator - room
3. surly - woolen - wooden - golden
4. draw - paint - crave - sculpture
5. detailed - talented - effective - statue

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions: (10Ms)

Today, our Egyptian engineers are building modern highways, bridges, and tunnels that connect all parts of the country. Egypt supports these projects to extend its road network and improve daily life. The New Administrative Capital, along with the new bridges in Cairo, shows how the nation continues to grow and develop. Egypt is also trying to change the old transportation system to the modern one that allows people to travel faster, transport goods, and reach work and school more easily.

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. Egyptian engineers are building modern houses. (.....)
2. Egypt doesn't support the road network projects. (.....)
3. Egypt isn't trying to change the old transportation system. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

4. Modern transportation system allows people to travel (slower - faster - worse).
5. Egypt supports these projects to (extend - decrease - low) its road network.

6 Write an email of (5) sentences describing your vision for Egypt's future transport: (10Ms)

electric buses - smart systems - modern metro

...
📍
☆
📎
A
🗑️

From :

To :

Subject :

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Al-Azhar Test

3

Marks: 60

1 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

(10Ms)

engineers - crowded - transportation - statue - improve - infrastructure

Salma : Did you know that Egypt has started new ① projects in recent years.

Mariam : What do you mean by these projects?

Salma : These are projects and services, such as ② and power supplies.

Mariam : Yeah, that's perfect! In the past, roads were narrow and ③

Salma : Today, skilled ④ are building modern roads.

Mariam : I think, Every new project will also ⑤ Egypt's economy.

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

(10Ms)

1. If she (get) the full mark, her father will bring a present to her.
2. The museum (whose) we visited had old sculptures.
3. Has Dina (swim) yet?
4. Both English (or) science are easy subjects.
5. My grandfather (not use) to read newspaper.

3 Choose the correct answer: (10Ms)

1. Today, we can buy tickets easily from (smart board - ticket machine - digital screen)
2. This is the engineer (which - where - who) built the new bridge.
3. Self-driving cars could be (safer - harder - noisier) than normal ones.
4. Either karim (nor - or - and) will come tomorrow.
5. Karim (hasn't - haven't - doesn't) played the match recently.
6. In New Alamein City, visitors can enjoy (tiring - black - peaceful) beaches.
7. If you eat healthy food, you (will - would - did) be fit.
8. My friend has shown (weakness - determination - fear) when she insisted on finishing her project.
9. I used to (read - reads - reading) books at night.
10. Greek and Roman (farmers - teachers - emperors) added new walls and carvings.

4 Read and circle the odd one out, and replace it with a correct one: (10Ms)

1. archeologist - tomb - Sphinx - town
2. teacher - doctor - purify - engineer
3. darken - plane - deepen - widen
4. linen - highway - bridge - tunnel
5. tall - golden - huge - road

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:(10Ms)

New Alamein City is a modern city by the sea. It is considered as the most beautiful costal city. It shows the blue waters of the Mediterranean Sea meet golden sandy beaches. Visitors can enjoy peaceful beaches, luxury hotels, and beautiful walkways. The city also includes universities, shopping centers, and cultural areas that make it more than just a tourist spot; it's a new home for many Egyptians. New Alamein City is a great progress for Egypt and its government that shows their determination and success.

General Tests

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. New Alamein is an old city. (.....)
2. New Alamein shows the blue waters of the Red Sea. (.....)
3. New Alamein City shows Egypt determination. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

4. Visitors can enjoy peaceful (tombs - beaches - rooms)
5. New Alamein City is a modern city by the (sea - river - land).

6 Write a paragraph of (5) sentences words using the following guiding elements: (10Ms)

"Egypt is changing today"

► transportation - highway - cities

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

خاص بالأزهر الشريف

Al-Azhar Test

4

Marks: 60

1 Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

(10Ms)

projects - polished - clay - incredible - awful - shades

Nagham: Look at my new vase, I made it from ①

Karma: Wow! It's amazing.

Nagham: I used red and blue clay to make new ②

Karma: Fantastic! May I touch it?

Nagham: Of course. It's smooth and shiny. I ③ it.

Karma: These tiny patterns around the middle are ④

Nagham: Thank you! It's one of my favorite ⑤

2 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

(10Ms)

1. They have just (do) their homework.
2. This is the window (whose) my dad painted yesterday.
3. (Either) the club nor the park is near to me.
4. If Hend (play) well, she will win the game.
5. My uncle used to (travelling) abroad.

3 Choose the correct answer:

(10Ms)

1. She (whispered - screamed - shouted) something secretly in my ears.
2. (Had - Have - Has) Ahmed seen a sculpture before?
3. She chose a simple black (house - garden - frame) for the photograph.
4. Either tennis (nor - or - and) football is a good sport.
5. The ancient (murals - gym - sketch) inside the tomb were great.
6. If you don't study hard, you (will - don't - won't) pass the test.
7. I love the (line - pattern - stick) on your dress.
8. This is the man (whose - which - who) always helps me.
9. The new community center has excellent (facilities - planes - trains), including a gym and a swimming pool.
10. My friend didn't (used - use - using) to play football when he was 6.

4 Read and circle the odd one out, and replace it with a correct one:

(10Ms)

1. safe - power - talented - smart
2. flower - tower - shower - liar
3. inspire - create - draw - shapes
4. product - young - device - instrument
5. temple - tomb - museum - factory

5 Read the following passage, then answer the questions:(10Ms)

The Aswan Dam is one of the most important modern structures in Egypt. It was built across the Nile River in the south of the country. It serves as an important source of power and protection for the Egyptian people. Before the dam was built, the Nile's floods often damaged villages and farms. Today, the dam controls the river's flow, prevents these floods and keeps communities safe. It also stores huge amounts of water. This stored water allows farmers to irrigate their fields throughout the year.

A Read and write (T) True or (F) False:

1. The Aswan Dam is one of the most useless structures. (.....)
2. The Aswan Dam was built across the Nile River. (.....)
3. Before the dam, the floods often damaged villages. (.....)

B Choose the correct answer:

4. The Aswan Dam is an important source of (chemicals - power - petrol).
5. The dam controls the river's flow and prevents (floods - water - protection).

- 6** Write a paragraph of (5) sentences words using the following guiding elements: (10Ms)

"A visit to the Art Gallery"

- When did you go? ► What did you see there?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(2Ms)

1. Omar and his friends spent a day at an art gallery. (.....)
2. There was a large statue made of wood. (.....)
3. Omar felt very happy and full of new ideas. (.....)
4. They didn't buy any picture cards from the gift shop. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(2Ms)

1. The art student bought a large to paint her final project.
a) canvas b) tomb c) monorail d) bike
2. Either pizza burger is unhealthy.
a) and b) more c) or d) nor
3. The new office building runs on clean, renewable
a) coal b) solar power c) petrol d) gold
4. Shady studied math yet?
a) hasn't b) haven't c) doesn't d) didn't

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2Ms)

frame - loom - linen - detailed - artist

The ancient Egyptians invented the loom. This device turned
 ① threads into cloth. The ② needs great skill
 to lift and lower the threads. First, an expert made a ③ plan
 of the wooden parts. Workers built a strong ④ from them.
 The loom wove colorful fabric. This idea still inspires people to make cloth.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

(7Ms)

Tuna el-Gebel is an ancient burial site in the desert near Minya. It has many underground tombs and long ways. Archaeologists have found hundreds of mummies there, especially of birds. The most famous tomb belongs to Petosiris, a high priest who lived over 2,000 years ago. His tomb's walls have beautiful carvings and paintings that mix Egyptian and Greek art. People still amazed and asked about the way that ancient Egyptians built such tombs and preserved the animals. When you go there, you will feel like stepping back in time.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or ,d:

1. Tuna el- Gabel is in the desert near.....
 a) Fayoum b) Cairo c) Minya d) Delta
2. The most famous tomb belongs to.....
 a) Petosiris b) teacher b) Amun d) doctor

B Answer the following question:

3. What have the archeologists found in Tuna el- Gabel site?

▶

4. Who is the Petosiris?

▶

5. What do you feel when you go there?

▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

(4Ms)

1. If Sally (cook) the meal, it will be delicious.
2. My father used (play) volleyball when he was younger.

General Tests

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2Ms)

1. you - heard - Have - about - place - ever - this?

▶

2. has - Egypt - new - projects - infrastructure - started.

▶

7 Punctuate the following:

(4Ms)

1. how has he travelled there to Paris

▶

2. Mariam Salma, and Jana explore tombs

▶

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below:

(7Ms)

"Deir el- Medina"

▶ village - royal tombs

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Marks: 30

General Test

6



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(2Ms)

1. Ali created a clever new robot. (.....)
2. He started by drawing a detailed plan. (.....)
3. Ali can't fix anything easily. (.....)
4. Ali's goal is to get a lot of money. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(2Ms)

1. The company's latest is a solar-powered phone.
a) damage b) flood c) innovation d) building
2. If they wake up early, they attend the class.
a) will b) are c) were d) don't
3. A/An is a moving staircase that carries people between different floors of a building.
a) stairs b) escalator c) elevator d) rocket
4. I didn't to play the piano when I was a child.
a) used b) uses c) using d) use

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2Ms)

digital - Passengers - electric - petrol - monorail

Egypt is changing travel ways with new systems. In Cairo and Giza, a new ① will connect areas above ground using a single track. Stations will have ② screens and elevators for easy access. The ③ buses will reduce pollution. ④ can buy tickets by card or cash. These innovations give faster and cleaner means of transportation.

General Tests

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

(7Ms)

Luxor Temple is a big monument on the Nile's east bank. It was built to honor the god Amun-Ra and the power of the pharaohs. It was built over centuries. Visitors enter through a huge gate and walk down a way lined with statues. Inside, they see huge columns, big statues of rulers, and walls covered in detailed hieroglyphics festivals. At night, the temple shines against the sky. It offers a direct and inspiring connection to the deep history and the ancient Egypt's great civilization. Egypt is doing great work today to keep these places safe.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or ,d:

1. Luxor Temple was built over
a) days b) centuries c) months d) years
2. Visitors enter through a gate .
a) small b) tiny c) huge d) spotted

B Answer the following question:

3. What can you see inside the temple?

▶

4. Why was Luxor Temple built?

▶

5. How is the temple at night?

▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

(4Ms)

1. This is the house (whose) my father bought.
2. I have (always) swum in the deep sea.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2Ms)

1. elevators - have - **Some** - escalators - stations - and.

▶

2. painting - a - **She** - beautiful - of - forest - drew - the.

▶

7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. if it's cold wear a jacket.

▶

2. did he use to study at night

▶

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below: (7Ms)

"Clean Transportation"

▶ electric bus - metros

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(2Ms)

1. New Alamein City is on Egypt's southern shore. (.....)
2. The city is planned to be crowded. (.....)
3. It feels like a city from the past. (.....)
4. People who visit can relax on quiet beaches. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer:

(2Ms)

1. The city's new transport systems successfully reduced air
 a) pollution b) earthquake c) left out d) oxygen
2. If we for the exam, we will answer it easily.
 a) studied b) study c) studies d) studying
3. He needed another clean to add the final details to his portrait.
 a) mouse b) screen c) chair d) paintbrush
4. She is the girl mother is a doctor.
 a) whom b) who c) whose d) that

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2Ms)

modern - talented - stupid - sculptures - masterpieces

Art takes many forms. We can find art works like paintings and
 ① Each work shows special creativity. Our ②
 artists shape wood or stone into powerful forms. While not every piece
 becomes famous, some are remembered as ③ Galleries
 display both classic and ④ works, where visitors often stop
 to share their thoughts. Art is a world of color and imagination.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

(7Ms)

People always wanted to measure time. First, they used simple things like the sun or sand. Then, clever makers built the first machines with wheels and gears inside. The biggest improvement was the pendulum, it swings side to side. This made clocks much more accurate. One expert, who understood movement well, created a clock that could count every second. He built it in a busy workshop full of tools. His new design became famous all over Europe. This wonderful invention changed how everyone lived and worked each day.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or ,d:

- First, people used the sun or to measure time.
a) clock b) dust c) sand d) clouds
- The biggest improvement was the
a) pendulum b) board c) desk d) window

B Answer the following question:

- What could a clock do?

▶

- How did the pendulum work?

▶

- How did the clever makers build the first machine?

▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

(4Ms)

- (Does) your sister use to go to the club?
- (Either) Karim and Asser play tennis.

General Tests

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2Ms)

1. eco - friendly - Many - transportation - is - new - becoming -



2. visited - Have - Temple - you - Luxor - before -?



7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. egypt is changing the transportation systems



2. has your friend done his work



8 Write an e-mail of SIXTY (60) to your friend Asser: (7Ms)

▶ Tell him about "The Exciting Changes in Egypt". Your email address is ahmed@yahoo.com, and your friend's email address is asser@gmail.com

smart systems - new cities

From :

To :

Subject :

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Marks: 30

General Test

8



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(2Ms)

1. Wadi El-Hitan is called the Valley of the Whales. (.....)
2. These fossils show how sharks once lived on land. (.....)
3. People can walk on paths to learn about Egypt's future. (.....)
4. Many visitors come to see these discoveries. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(2Ms)

1. A/ An clock shows the right time.
a) big b) accurate c) red d) unique
2. Mariam used the hill when she was a child)
a) to climb b) climb c) climbs d) climbing
3. The river forms a natural between the two countries.
a) mountain b) temple c) transport d) border
4. We will use the monorail is one of the fastest transportation.
a) whom b) who c) which d) whose

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2Ms)

foolishness - rulers - carving - High Dam - wisdom

Near Egypt's southern border, there is the Temple of Dakka. It was built to honor Thoth, the god of ① Later, it became larger by Greek and Roman ② who added walls and carvings. People admire the sunlit ③ of gods. When the Nile's waters rose due to the ④ experts carefully moved the entire temple to a safer and higher place.

General Tests

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

(7Ms)

It was an amazing trip that really showed us the talent of Mahmoud Makhtar. His huge statue, Nahdit Masr, shows a woman with a sphinx. Its size and idea were amazing. It's difficult to imagine starting such a big piece. The statue was great, but I liked his paintings more. The big, colorful wall painting was beautiful. It was interesting to see his first student painting next to his old color tray and one small brush. I saw his pottery room also showed his wide skills. The whole visit was very wonderful. It's unforgettable.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or ,d:

- The statue shows a woman with a
a) son b) daughter c) cat d) sphinx
- The whole visit was
a) wonderful b) boring c) bad d) awful

B Answer the following question:

- What did the pottery room show?

▶

- What did the speaker like more? Why?

▶

- How was the trip?

▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

(4Ms)

- If you do your homework, I (reward) you.
- My mom hasn't (finish) the meal yet.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2Ms)

1. colorful - Did - vase - make - clay - a - you?

▶

2. Self - driving - electric - and - buses - cars - eco - friendly - are.

▶

7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. we saw paintings sculptures, and pottery.

▶

2. have you visited a gallery before

▶

8 Write an e-mail of SIXTY (60) to your friend Jack: (7Ms)

▶ Invite him to visit New Alamein City. Your email address is ali@yahoo.com, and your friend's email address is jack@gmail.com

▶ What can he see there?

▶ How can he enjoy his time?

From	:	
To	:	
Subject	:	
.....		
.....		
.....		
.....		
.....		
.....		



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(2Ms)

1. Giza Station is a very old metro stop. (.....)
2. People can get tickets from a machine. (.....)
3. There aren't escalators and elevators. (.....)
4. Voice announcements provide clear travel news. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(2Ms)

1. Smart phones are examples of that make our life easier.
a) temple b) chores c) technology d) population
2. If Aml, she will book a flight.
a) travel b) travels c) travelled d) travelling
3. The company plans to its new electric cars next year.
a) manufacture b) cook c) break d) ride
4. Sandy just drawn her picture.
a) have b) does c) has d) is

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2Ms)

wood - galleries - wool - painting - palettes

Every frame holds a story inside. There might be a ① or a photo capturing a special moment. Artists use brushes and color ② to create beautiful pictures on canvas. Some make sculptures, carving of ③ or stone. ④ display both old and new works, where visitors often whisper as they look. Art is not boring or hard—it is everywhere, filled with color and imagination.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

(7Ms)

Egypt is now one of the most powerful industrial countries in Africa and the Middle East. Long ago, life was mostly about farming and small local work. Villages had few machines or factories. Egypt used to buy many things from other countries. Travel was slow, and cities had fewer jobs.

Today, things are very different. The textile industry in cities like Mahalla makes high-quality clothes and fabrics sold in Egypt and in other countries. Egypt's food industry produces its own pasta, juice, and snacks. A strong steel industry helps build new roads, bridges, and homes.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or ,d:

- Long ago, villages had factories.
a) many b) few c) a lot d) much
- Today, Egypt has steel industry.
a) strong b) weak c) poor d) non

B Answer the following question:

- What did Egypt use to do in the past?

▶

- Describe the Egyptian textile industry today?

▶

- What does Egypt's food industry produce today?

▶

General Tests

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets: (4Ms)

1. This is the factory (then) our country built.

2. Neither Sunday (and) Monday is a holiday.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2Ms)

1. local - people - shops - Many - in - small - work.

►

2. proud - your - you - country - Are - of - progress?

► ?

7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. he had maps paintings, and photos.

►

2. did you visit your uncle yesterday

►

8 Write a paragraph of (50) words using the following guiding elements: (7Ms)

"A hidden Egyptian place you want to visit"

► ancient tomb - monuments

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Marks: 30

General Test

10



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(2Ms)

1. Tuna el-Gebel is an old burial place near Minya. (.....)
2. It has few underground rooms. (.....)
3. People have found lots of animal mummies there. (.....)
4. Walking through this site feels like going back in time. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(2Ms)

1. The modern buses will move without a driver.
a) safely b) slowly c) dangerously d) riskily
2. I help you if you want.
a) have b) was c) will d) am
3. Youssef showed even though the lesson was difficult.
a) carelessness b) laughter c) determination d) foolishness
4. We eaten our breakfast recently.
a) have b) do c) has d) is

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box: (2Ms)

proud - modern - factories - innovation - shy

Clean energy from the sun, wind, and natural gas now powers houses and factories. These changes make Egypt more ① As new ② open, more people find jobs and help the economy grow. Egyptians are ③ of how their country improves every day. Egypt's progress shows that with ④, hard work, and teamwork, a nation can build a bright future.

General Tests

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

(7Ms)

Egypt has built new highways, tunnels, and bridges to help people and goods move more quickly and safely. With hard work and smart ideas, the road system grows larger each year. Steady electricity helps these projects succeed and keeps cities working well. The New Administrative Capital is a great example of how a good plan can make life better. These projects are not only helping the economy but they also linking different places all over the country. Modern roads and buildings help people to travel, work, and live in improved ways. Egypt is getting ready for a bright and connected future.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or ,d:

- The road system grows each year.
a) larger b) smaller c) worse d) younger
- Egypt is getting ready for the
a) past b) yesterday c) future d) war

B Answer the following question:

- What has Egypt built?
▶
- What helps these projects succeed?
▶
- Why are modern roads and buildings important?
▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

(4Ms)

- This is my brother (which) is wearing a white shirt.
- (Either) P.E and art are enjoyable subjects.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2Ms)

1. did - design - start - When - to - you - the - room?

▶

2. has - The - treasures - artifacts - museum - and - many.

▶

7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. i went to the art gallery

▶

2. what did she use to do

▶

8 Write an informal e-mail of SIXTY (60) to your friend Marwan: (7Ms)

Tell him about your last artwork. Your name is Adam, and your email address is adam@gmail.com. Your friend's name is Marwan, and his email is maro@gmail.com.

paintings - sculptures

From	:	
To	:	
Subject	:	
.....		
.....		
.....		
.....		
.....		
.....		



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(2Ms)

1. The new projects make our economy grow. (.....)
2. Egypt has created new hospitals. (.....)
3. This old infrastructure helps to improve daily life. (.....)
4. These modern projects prepare the country for future. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(2Ms)

1. In the old market, the were busy shaping pottery and weaving baskets.
a) engineers b) doctors c) craftsmen d) pilots
2. She hasn't anything for her party yet.
a) prepare b) prepared c) prepares d) preparing
3. A person who shows visitors around historical places is a
a) tour guide b) farmer c) sailor d) tourist
4. Neither watching movie reading is my hobby.
a) or b) for c) and d) nor

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2Ms)

Art - ancient - galleries - famous - visitors

Artists create many forms from wood and stone. Not every piece becomes

- ①, but some are remembered as timeless masterpieces. In
 ②, you can see both old and modern works. ③
 often stop to softly talk about what they see. ④ is not bored
 or hard to understand, it is all around us, filled with color, deep emotion
 and imagination.

4 Read the text and answer the questions:

(7Ms)

I invented a useful gadget called the Homework Hub. It's a desk designed to help students. One side is a small whiteboard for quick notes or math problems. The other side has pockets to hold papers. It stands upright on any desk to save space. This keeps important notes visible and stops papers from getting lost or cut. The Homework Hub makes studying more organized and perfect. Everyone who tries it, loves how it's useful and helps them to be focused. It's a simple tool that makes a big difference in staying tidy and prepared.

A Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The invention is called the Hub .
 a) Homework b) School c) Desk d) Book
- Everyone who tries the invention, it.
 a) hates b) cuts c) breaks d) loves

B Answer the following question:

3. What is the Homework Hub?

▶

4. How can students use the Homework Hub?

▶

5. What is the result of using this tool?

▶

5 Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

(4Ms)

- I will be much focused if the room (be) quiet.
- She is the woman (whom) bag is stolen.

General Tests

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2Ms)

1. is - site - mysterious - Tuna el-Gabel - a - burial.

▶

2. an - Have - before - visit - tomb - you - ancient?

▶ ?

7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. i visited the big ancient temple

▶

2. have you eaten pizza before

▶

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below: (7Ms)

"The Egyptian Loom"

▶ How did the workers assemble the loom?

▶ Why is it important today?

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Marks: 30

General Test

12



1 Listen and write (T) True or (F) False:

(2Ms)

1. The ancient Egyptians made a bridge. (.....)
2. The loom was used to weave linen into soft cloth. (.....)
3. First, a skilled planner drew a detailed plan. (.....)
4. The loom couldn't weave thread into fabric. (.....)

2 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(2Ms)

1. The mechanic worked in a small workshop filled with tools and
 a) gears b) flowers c) butterflies d) trees
2. This is the car is with color red.
 a) who b) whom c) which d) where
3. I held a tiny to carve details into my clay vase.
 a) statue b) treasure c) tomb d) toothpick
4. Either Amir Asser comes to the party.
 a) or b) for c) and d) nor

3 Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

(2Ms)

animals - Greek - mummies - pyramid - tomb

Tuna el-Gebel is an ancient burial site in the desert near Minya. Archeologists have found hundreds of animal ① there. At the center, there is the tomb of Petosiris. The walls of his ② are covered with beautiful carvings and colorful paintings that mix Egyptian and ③ styles. The secret of how these tombs were made and the ④ preserved still makes people amazed.

General Tests

4

Read the text and answer the questions:

(7Ms)

The Aswan Dam is a great structure built on the Nile River in southern Egypt. Engineers created it to control the river's flooding and to produce electricity. The dam stores a huge amount of water. This water is used by farmers to water their crops during the year, even in dry seasons. The dam also protects towns from floods. It's very important as it produces clean, powerful energy that supplies homes, schools, and factories in the country. This powerful structure gives water and power that help to shape Egypt's success and improve the daily life.

A

Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- The Aswan Dam is in Egypt.
a) northern b) southern c) eastern d) western
- The Aswan Dam is helping to shape Egypt's
a) success b) flood c) failure d) pollution

B

Answer the following question:

- What is the stored water used for?

▶

- Why is this dam important?

▶

- Why did the engineers create it?

▶

5

Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

(4Ms)

- If you encourage your friend, he (would) be better.
- The teacher has just (explain) the lesson.

6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (2Ms)

1. are - screens - trains - **There** - inside - digital.

▶

2. take - **If** - you'll - monorail, - faster - you - a - arrive.

▶

7 Punctuate the following: (4Ms)

1. please show me your English homework.

▶

2. has she used electric buses before

▶

8 Write a paragraph of SIXTY (60) words using the words below: (7Ms)

"Smart Transportation in Egypt"

▶ cleaner - electricity

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

Part 4

Listening Scripts



Test 1 on Unit 1

My name is Ziad, and I love art. Last week, I was so excited to visit the new art gallery near my school. My favorite piece was a giant, colorful mural painted on the wall. I saw an artist mixing colors on his palette before starting a new piece. We were asked to whisper when talking about the art. I felt so inspired by everything and decided to start my own final masterpiece right away when I got home.



Test 2 on Unit 2

Last week, we met an engineer who showed us a new gadget. It was a small solar robot, which he said was his best invention. He gave us a blueprint and a small tool to assemble a model. He told us to work hard and try to improve the design every day. He thinks that anyone with a good idea can innovate.



Test 3 on Unit 3

Tuna el-Gebel is a mysterious burial site near Minya. Archaeologists have made many great discoveries there, including the tomb of Petosiris. His tomb walls have beautiful carvings that show ancient Greek and Egyptian art. They have also found hundreds of animal mummies, especially preserved birds. Many visitors have been amazed by how the ancient Egyptians managed to preserve these creatures for thousands of years. It truly is an unforgettable place."



Test 4 on Unit 4

Egypt has built many new highways, bridges, and tunnels to improve transportation across the country. In the past, people used to travel on narrow and crowded roads, which made trips long and difficult. Today, modern infrastructure has made traveling faster and easier. Engineers have also worked on clean energy projects such as solar and wind power to make Egypt more self-reliant. Visitors to the New Administrative Capital are amazed by its modern buildings, green spaces, and smart services.



Test 5 on Unit 5

"The new Cairo Metro Line is one of Egypt's smartest transportation systems. It has automatic doors, digital screens, and clear announcements to help passengers. The metro uses LED lights, which save electricity. At each station, there are elevators and escalators for easy access. Many people choose the metro because it is faster, cleaner, and better for the environment. If more passengers use the metro, the streets will become less crowded and pollution will decrease."



General Test 5

Last Saturday, Omar and his family spent a wonderful day at an art gallery. They looked at bright paintings and a large statue made of wood. His sister pointed at one and called it a masterpiece. Omar felt very happy and full of new ideas. On their way out, they bought some picture cards from the gift shop so they could remember everything. It was a fun trip for everyone.

General Test 6

Ali created a clever new robot to help with chores at home. He started by drawing a detailed plan. Next, he gathered gadgets and tools to build it. The robot runs on solar power, so it doesn't waste electricity. Ali keeps working to make it better every day. If something doesn't work, he can fix it easily. His goal is to improve it to become a useful helper for everyone.

General Test 7

New Alamein City is a modern place on Egypt's northern shore. It has big streets, green parks, and tall towers. The city is planned to be smart, mixing history and new life. It feels like a city from the future. People who visit can relax on quiet beaches and stay in hotels. Many Egyptians have moved there as you can work and go to schools. They call it their home.

General Test 8

Wadi El-Hitan, the Valley of the Whales, is found in Egypt's Western Desert. Scientists have found many old whale bones there. These fossils show how whales once lived on land and then changed to live in the sea. People can walk on paths to learn about Egypt's past. Signs explain the different fossils and what the land was like millions of years ago. Many visitors come to see these discoveries:

General Test 9

Giza Station is a very new metro stop in Egypt. People can get tickets from a machine or pay using a card. The station has smart doors and electronic screens. Escalators and elevators help passengers go between the different levels easily. Voice announcements provide clear travel news. The trains use less power. This system

allows everyone in the city to travel in a way that is quicker, cleaner, and safer.

General Test 10

Tuna el-Gebel is an old burial place near Minga that draws both scientists and visitors. It has many underground rooms and long hallways with pretty carvings and paintings. People have found lots of animal mummies there, mostly birds. The center has the tomb of Petosiris, a priest who lived more than two thousand years ago. Walking through this site feels like going back in time and discovering Egypt's amazing past.

General Test 11

Our country, Egypt, has created new roads, bridges, and tunnels to connect its cities. This makes travel quicker and safer for everyone. Projects like the New Administrative Capital and better transport help the economy grow. They also make it easier for people to get to work and school. This modern infrastructure helps to improve daily life and let us ready for a better tomorrow and prepare the country for future.

General Test 12

A long time ago, the ancient Egyptians made a great tool called the loom. It was used to weave linen into soft cloth for clothing and blankets. First, a skilled planner would draw a detailed plan showing all the parts. Then, workers carefully put the wooden frame together. Once built, the loom could weave thread into beautiful and useful fabric. This clever invention still inspires how we make cloth today.

Answers Key



Scan and check the "Student Book" model answers file here.

امسح الكود للاطلاع على ملف إجابات كتاب الطالب النموذجية.

Grade 6 Supplementary Part 1

Revision on Unit 1

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(Vocabulary)

- | | |
|-------------------|----------------|
| 1- e) mural | 2- b) palette |
| 3- a) sculpture | 4- d) carve |
| 5- d) treasures | 6- a) pottery |
| 7- c) sculpture | 8- c) excited |
| 9- d) artist | 10- b) sketch |
| 11- e) creativity | 12- b) canvas |
| 13- c) gallery | 14- b) whisper |
| 15- a) workshop | 16- b) Sphinx |
| 17- a) patterns | 18- b) frame |
| 19- c) talented | 20- d) surface |

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(Grammar)

- | | |
|-------------------|----------------------|
| 1- e) both | 2- b) or |
| 3- a) both... and | 4- b) Both... and |
| 5- d) neither | 6- b) both |
| 7- a) nor | 8- d) neither... nor |
| 9- c) both... and | 10- b) either... or |

3- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- | | | |
|------------|-----------|--------|
| 1- and | 2- and | 3- nor |
| 4- nor | 5- or | 6- and |
| 7- Neither | 8- either | |

4- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- | | |
|--------------|----------------|
| 1- galleries | 2- canvas |
| 3- carve | 4- masterpiece |

5- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- | | |
|------------|-------------|
| 1- statue | 2- sphinx |
| 3- painted | 4- talented |

6- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- | | |
|-------------|-----------|
| 1- base | 2- smooth |
| 3- patterns | 4- proud |

7- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1- People visit the museum to see the ancient statues.
- 2- They learn about the history of Egypt.
- 3- Visitors can see the golden mask of King Tutankhamun.
- 4- Artists use their palette and paintbrush to mix colors.
- 5- I wish I had my palette and paintbrush.

8- Punctuate the following:

- 1- The ancient Egyptians built huge temples.
- 2- Do you enjoy sculpture, painting, or both?
- 3- First she saw beautiful, huge paintings.
- 4- Do you like looking at paintings?
- 5- It's full of color, feeling, and imagination.

Test on Unit 1

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

- | | | | |
|------|------|------|------|
| 1- F | 2- T | 3- F | 4- T |
|------|------|------|------|

2- Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|---------------|-----------------|
| 1- d) palette | 2- b) sculpture |
| 3- c) or | 4- c) both |

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- | | |
|--------------|----------------|
| 1- palette | 2- canvas |
| 3- whispered | 4- masterpiece |

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- | | |
|--------------------|----------------|
| 1- c) types of art | 2- c) colorful |
|--------------------|----------------|

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- Because it is a great way to show creativity and imagination.
- 4- A palette

Answers Key

- 5- They might carve strong shapes out of wood or stone, or use clay to make pottery.

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1- or 2- nor

5- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1- Both my sister and brother love painting.
2- She displayed her work in the gallery.

7- Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1- Is the sphinx in the Egyptian Museum?
2- I saw a colorful sculpture yesterday.

Revision on Unit 2

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(Vocabulary)

- 1- b) blueprint 2- c) tool
3- a) gadget 4- c) assembles
5- d) engineer 6- b) fabrics
7- a) floods 8- a) improve
9- d) pendulum 10- b) creativity
11- c) innovates 12- a) invention
13- d) Linen 14- b) energy

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(Grammar)

- 1- c) who 2- a) whose
3- b) that 4- c) who
5- d) which 6- d) unlock
7- b) rewrite 8- a) which
9- c) who 10- d) not fair
11- b) which 12- a) recycle

1- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1- who 2- which
3- unsafe 4- which
5- which 6- who
7- whose 8- return

1- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- structure 2- engineers
3- flood 4- generate

1- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- model 2- assemble
3- fix 4- build

1- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- gadget 2- blueprint
3- assemble 4- improve

1- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1- How does the dam help farmers?

2- Clever inventors built the first clock.

3- The workshop was full of tools.

4- The engineer who designed the robot is smart.

5- The loom helped the ancient Egyptians make clothes.

8- Punctuate the following:

1- What does the young engineer say?

2- The Aswan Dam is in Egypt.

Test on Unit 2

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1- T 2- F 3- T 4- F

2- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- a) loom 2- c) rebuild
3- c) that 4- b) whose

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- invention 2- gears
3- blueprint 4- assemble

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- d) creativity 2- a) ancient

(B) Answer the following questions:

3- To stop the annual flood of the Nile.

4- Clean energy and water.

5- Aswan High Dam (Answers may vary)

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1- unsafe 2- whose

6- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1- The clever engineer designed the solar robot.

2- It is fun to play with a gadget.

7- Punctuate the following sentences:

1- Is The workshop was full of tools.

2- Did the engineer fix the machine?

Revision on Unit 3

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(Vocabulary)

- 1- c) burial site 2- d) fossils
3- b) preserve 4- a) tomb
5- b) restored 6- c) craftsmen
7- b) corridor 8- b) heritage
9- d) archaeologist 10- b) ocean
11- b) Carving 12- d) mysterious
13- c) carvings 14- c) skeleton

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(Grammar)

- 1- b) have 2- d) have
3- d) Have 4- a) has
5- b) haven't 6- c) has

Answers Key

- 7- c) has 8- c) have decorated
3-Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- | | |
|--------------|-----------------------|
| 1- have | 2- have already eaten |
| 3- has stood | 4- ever seen |
| 5- eaten | 6- finished |
| 7- been | 8- arrived |

- 4-Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- | | |
|-------------|-------------|
| 1- mummies | 2- preserve |
| 3- corridor | 4- carvings |

- 5-Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- | | |
|----------|-------------|
| 1- ocean | 2- assemble |
| 3- fix | 4- build |

- 6-Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- | | |
|--------------|---------------|
| 1- ocean | 2- discovered |
| 3- skeletons | 4- heritage |

- 7-Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1- Have you visited the ancient tomb?
- 2- The temple has stood for thousands of years.
- 3- The archaeologist has just discovered new chambers.
- 4- Egypt has protected its rich heritage.
- 5- The Valley of Whales is amazing.

- 8-Punctuate the following:

- 1- The workers have restored the temple.
- 2- Has the tour guide arrived yet?

Test on Unit 3

- 1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1- F 2- T 3- F 4- T

- 2- Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|----------------|---------------|
| 1- c) restored | 2- d) fossils |
| 3- c) have | 4- c) hasn't |

- 3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- | | |
|--------------|--------------|
| 1- craftsmen | 2- preserved |
| 3- mummy | 4- corridor |

- 4- Read the text and answer the questions:

- (A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- | | |
|-------------------|----------------------|
| 1- b) interesting | 2- b) whales changed |
|-------------------|----------------------|

- (B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- The desert was covered by a huge ocean.
- 4- To preserve the skeletons for future generations.
- 5- A visit to Wadi El-Hitan (Answers may vary)

- 5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- | | |
|-------------------|----------|
| 1- hasn't visited | 2- whose |
|-------------------|----------|

- 6- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1- Have they finished exploring the chamber yet?
- 2- There are whale fossils in Egypt's desert.

- 7- Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1- Have you ever seen ancient tombs?
- 2- We have just restored the temple.

Revision on Unit 4

- 1-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(Vocabulary)

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1- b) infrastructure | 2- b) bridges |
| 3- a) energy | 4- c) self-reliant |
| 5- b) industry | 6- c) city |
| 7- b) manufacture | 8- b) facilities |
| 9- c) landscape | 10- a) determination |
| 11- a) create | 12- a) spacious |
| 13- a) Engineers | 14- a) to make bigger |

- 2-Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(Grammar)

- | | |
|---------------------|---------------------|
| 1- a) used to | 2- b) didn't use to |
| 3- c) Did | 4- a) used to |
| 5- a) didn't use to | 6- b) Did |
| 7- b) didn't use to | 8- b) used to |

- 3-Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- | | |
|------------------|---------------|
| 1- didn't use to | 2- didn't use |
| 3- used to | 4- use |
| 5- didn't use to | 6- used to |
| 7- didn't use to | 8- use |

- 4-Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------|
| 1- infrastructure | 2- engineers |
| 3- connected | 4- energy |

- 5-Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- | | |
|--------------|-----------------|
| 1- factories | 2- machines |
| 3- products | 4- self-reliant |

- 6-Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- | | |
|-------------|------------|
| 1- coastal | 2- modern |
| 3- progress | 4- history |

- 7-Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1- People used to depend mainly on farming.
- 2- Modern engineers have built new bridges.
- 3- There didn't use to be many factories.
- 4- Solar and wind are clean energy.
- 5- Luxor Temple is a magnificent ancient complex.

8-Punctuate the following:

- 1- **E**gypt has built many new highways in recent years.
- 2- **D**id people use to depend mainly on farming?

Test on Unit 4

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1- F 2- T 3- F 4- T

2- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- b) highways 2- a) used to
3- b) create 4- c) industry

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- develop 2- engineers
3- bridges 4- connected

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:

- 1- c) northern coast 2- b) progress

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- Tall glass buildings, wide roads, green parks, and cultural areas.
4- It lies on the beautiful northern coast.
5- Progress and long history.

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1- didn't use to 2- enlarge

6- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1- Egypt used to import many products.
2- The new capital has modern buildings.

7- Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1- **E**gypt is becoming more self-reliant.
2- **D**id the engineers build new bridges?

Revision on Unit 5

1- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(Vocabulary)

- 1- b) LED 2- d) monorail
3- a) environment 4- b) doors
5- d) announcements 6- a) energy
7- d) self-driving 8- a) machines
9- c) smarter 10- a) eco-friendly
11- b) screens 12- c) open
13- a) elevators 14- a) cameras

2- Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

(Grammar)

- 1- a) will 2- c) will
3- a) use 4- d) will become
5- a) will 6- d) will
7- d) will 8- a) will

3- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1- forgets 2- is
3- will not start 4- take

Answers Key

5- has

6- become to

7- are

8- do not use

4- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- monorail 2- screens
3- announcements 4- escalators

5- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- computers 2- avoid
3- eco-friendly 4- protect

6- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- fuel 2- smoke
3- comfortable 4- transport

7- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1- If we use renewable energy, the environment will be cleaner.
2- If you forget your card, you will buy a ticket.
3- Passengers mustn't block the train's doors.
4- The monorail will help you travel faster.
5- Cameras help self-driving cars drive safely.

8- Punctuate the following:

- 1- **I**f you take the metro, you will arrive quickly.
2- **D**oes the monorail have digital screens?

Test on Unit 5

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1- T 2- F 3- T 4- F

2- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- b) environment 2- b) monorail
3- a) will 4- c) will

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- passengers 2- digital
3- escalators 4- LED

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- b) clean the air 2- c) card or phone

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- They don't make smoke.
4- The environment will improve and the streets will become much less polluted.
5- Green Transport in Egypt. (Answers may vary)

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1- stand 2- is

6- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1- The new trains have smart doors.

Answers Key

2- If you take the monorail, you will arrive faster.

7- Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1- Does the metro have digital screens?
- 2- If everyone uses eco-friendly transport the planet will be cleaner.

Part 2

Weekly Evaluation

Week 1: Based on Unit 1

1- Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1- b) whispered | 2- c) masterpiece |
| 3- d) palette | 4- b) knife |
| 5- a) sculpture | 6- c) nor |
| 7- b) either | 8- b) and |
| 9- b) and | 10- d) or |

Week 2: Based on Unit 1

1- Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|----------------|----------------------|
| 1- b) talented | 2- a) incredible |
| 3- d) sketch | 4- c) art exhibition |
| 5- d) tiny | 6- b) and |
| 7- a) and | 8- b) or |
| 9- c) and | 10- a) nor |

Week 3: Based on Unit 2

1- Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|-----------------|----------------|
| 1- b) improve | 2- d) talented |
| 3- b) test | 4- c) useful |
| 5- a) assembled | 6- d) whose |
| 7- b) that | 8- a) who |
| 9- b) whose | 10- c) whose |

Week 4: Based on Unit 2

1- Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|----------------|--------------|
| 1- b) generate | 2- a) design |
| 3- a) loom | 4- b) wooden |
| 5- c) fabric | 6- a) who |
| 7- c) which | 8- a) that |
| 9- d) whose | 10- a) which |

Week 5: Based on Unit 3

1- Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1- b) archaeologist | 2- d) mummy |
| 3- c) chamber | 4- c) mummified |
| 5- a) mysterious | 6- b) has worked |
| 7- b) have lived | 8- a) have had |
| 9- c) has studied | 10- b) has played |

Week 6: Based on Unit 3

1- Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1- c) tour guide | 2- a) skillfully |
| 3- a) engineer | 4- c) decorate |
| 5- b) remain | 6- b) eaten |
| 7- c) has injured | 8- c) have washed |
| 9- a) opened | 10- b) gone |

Week 7: Based on Unit 4

1- Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1- b) highway | 2- b) infrastructure |
| 3- a) innovation | 4- b) effective |
| 5- c) economy | 6- b) used to |
| 7- c) didn't use to | 8- b) Did |
| 9- c) use | 10- c) Did |

Week 8: Based on Unit 4

1- Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1- a) shop | 2- c) encourage |
| 3- d) coastal cities | 4- c) vision |
| 5- d) luxury | 6- b) shopping center |
| 7- c) didn't use to | 8- b) use to |
| 9- c) didn't use to | 10- c) use |

Week 9: Based on Unit 5

1- Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|-------------------|------------------|
| 1- b) worse | 2- d) reduce |
| 3- c) environment | 4- b) time |
| 5- a) rains | 6- c) studies |
| 7- a) leave | 8- d) is |
| 9- c) does | 10- d) will help |

Week 10: Based on Unit 5

1- Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|-----------------------|------------------|
| 1- b) cleaner | 2- b) fresh |
| 3- c) wear seat belts | 4- b) quieter |
| 5- a) platform | 6- d) don't take |
| 7- a) move | 8- c) tell |
| 9- a) is | 10- c) send |

Week 11: General

1- Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1- c) masterpiece | 2- d) robot |
| 3- b) progress | 4- b) private car |
| 5- c) electricity | 6- d) and |
| 7- b) whose | 8- d) don't walk |
| 9- c) live | 10- b) will buy |

Week 12: General

1- Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|---------------------|------------------|
| 1- a) palette | 2- b) blueprint |
| 3- c) goods | 4- c) monorail |
| 5- b) air pollution | 6- b) or |
| 7- c) who | 8- c) rains |
| 9- c) used to | 10- c) will save |

Week 13: General

1- Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1- a) talented | 2- d) useful |
| 3- a) palette | 4- c) sculpture |
| 5- a) improve | 6- b) and |
| 7- d) has studied | 8- a) have cleaned |
| 9- c) use | 10- a) rains |

Week 14: General

1- Choose the correct answer:

- | | |
|------------|------------------|
| 1- a) gone | 2- d) skillfully |
|------------|------------------|

Answers Key

- 3- a) generate 4- d) does
5- c) small 6- d) used to
7- a) wooden 8- a) has read
9- c) nor 10- a) done

Part 3

General Tests

Al-Azhar Test 1

1-Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

- 1- canvas 2- paintbrush
3- pottery 4- statue 5- powerful

2-Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1- either 2- who
3- simplify 4- used to 5- will catch

3- Circle the correct answer:

- 1- eco-friendly 2- Did 3- fields
4- haven't 5- supply 6- whose 7- rewrite
8- inventions 9- Both 10- is

4- Read and circle the odd one out, and replace it with a correct one:

- 1- sleeping 2- train
3- swim 4- play 5- people

5-Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A)T) True or (F) False:

- 1- F 2- T 3- T

B) Circle the correct answer:

- 4- watering 5- improve

Al-Azhar Test 2

1-Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

- 1- exhibition 2- talented 3- statue 4- incredible 5- sketch

2-Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1- which 2- nor 3- sing
4- will understand 5- eaten

3- Circle the correct answer:

- 1- Sphinx 2- whose 3- measure 4- rains 5- archeologists 6- drawn 7- chamber 8- renewable 9- either 10- use

4- Read and circle the odd one out, and replace it with a correct one:

- 1- boards 2- room 3- surly
4- sculpture 5- statue

5-Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A)T) True or (F) False:

- 1- F 2- F 3- F

B) Circle the correct answer:

- 4- faster 5- extend

Al-Azhar Test 3

1-Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

- 1- infrastructure 2- transportation 3- crowded 4- engineers 5- improve

2-Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1- gets 2- which
3- swum 4- and
5- didn't use

3- Circle the correct answer:

- 1- ticket machine 2- who 3- safer
4- or 5- hasn't 6- peaceful 7- will
8- determination 9- read 10- emperors

4- Read and circle the odd one out, and replace it with a correct one:

- 1- town 2- purify 3- plane
4- linen 5- road

5-Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A)T) True or (F) False:

- 1- F 2- T 3- T

B) Circle the correct answer:

- 4- beaches 5- sea

Al-Azhar Test 4

1-Read and complete the dialogue with the words in the box:

- 1- clay 2- shades 3- polished
4- incredible 5- projects

2-Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1- done 2- which
3- Neither 4- plays
5- travel

3- Circle the correct answer:

- 1- whispered 2- Has 3- frame 4- or
5- murals 6- won't 7- pattern
8- who 9- facilities 10- use

4- Read and circle the odd one out, and replace it with a correct one:

- 1- power 2- liar 3- shapes
4- young 5- factory

5-Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

A)T) True or (F) False:

- 1- F 2- T 3- T

B) Circle the correct answer:

- 4- power 5- floods

Answers Key

General Test 5

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

1- F 2- T 3- T 4- F

2- Choose the correct answer:

1- a) canvas 2- c) or
3- b) solar power 4- a) hasn't

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1- linen 2- artist
3- frame 4- loom

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1- c) Minya 2- a) Petosiris

(B) Answer the following questions:

3- Hundreds of mummies there, especially of birds.

4- A high priest who lived over 2,000 years ago.

5- I feel like stepping back in time.

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1- cooks 2- to play

6- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1- Have you ever heard about this place?
2- Egypt has started new infrastructure projects.

7- Punctuate the following sentences:

1- How has he travelled there to Paris?
2- Mariam, Salma, and Jana explore tombs.

General Test 6

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

1- T 2- T 3- F 4- F

2- Choose the correct answer:

1- c) innovation 2- a) will
3- b) escalator 4- d) use

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1- monorail 2- digital
3- electric 4- Passengers

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1- b) centuries 2- c) huge

(B) Answer the following questions:

3- Huge columns, big statues of rulers, and walls covered in detailed hieroglyphics festivals.

4- To honor the god Amun-Ra and the power of the pharaohs.

5- The temple shines against the sky

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1- which 2- never

6- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1- Some stations have escalators and elevators.

2- She drew a beautiful painting of the forest.

7- Punctuate the following sentences:

1- If it's cold, wear a jacket.

2- Did he use to study at night?

General Test 7

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

1- F 2- F 3- T 4- T

2- Choose the correct answer:

1- a) pollution 2- b) study
3- d) paintbrush 4- c) whose

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1- sculptures 2- talented
3- masterpieces 4- modern

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1- c) sand 2- a) pendulum

(B) Answer the following questions:

3- It could count every second.

4- It swings side to side

5- They built the first machines with wheels and gears inside.

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1- Did 2- Both

6- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1- Many new transportation is becoming eco-friendly.

2- Have you visited Luxor Temple before?

7- Punctuate the following sentences:

1- Egypt is changing the transportation systems.

2- Has your friend done his work?

General Test 8

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

1- T 2- F 3- F 4- T

2- Choose the correct answer:

1- b) accurate 2- a) to climb
3- d) border 4- c) which

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1- wisdom 2- rulers
3- carving 4- High Dam

Answers Key

General Test 10

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

1- T 2- F 3- T 4- T

2- Choose the correct answer:

1- a) safely 2- c) will
3- a) carelessness 4- a) have

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1- modern 2- factories
3- proud 4- innovation

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1- a) larger 2- c) future

(B) Answer the following questions:

3- Egypt has built new highways, tunnels, and bridges.

4- Steady electricity.

5- They help people to travel, work, and live in improved ways.

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1- who 2- Both

6- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1- When did you start to design the room?
2- The museum has many artifacts and treasures.

7- Punctuate the following sentences:

1- I went to the art gallery.

2- What did she use to do?

General Test 11

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

1- T 2- F 3- F 4- T

2- Choose the correct answer:

1- c) craftsmen 2- b) prepared
3- a) tour guide 4- d) nor

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1- famous 2- galleries
3- visitors 4- Art

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1- a) Homework 2- d) loves

(B) Answer the following questions:

3- It's a desk designed to help students.

4- One side is a small whiteboard for quick notes or math problems. The other side has pockets to hold papers.

5- It makes studying more organized and perfect.

Read the text and answer the questions:

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1- d) sphinx 2- a) wonderful

2) Answer the following questions:

3- It showed his wide skills.

4- He liked his paintings more

5- It was wonderful.

3- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1- will reward 2- finished

4- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1- Did you make a colorful clay vase?

2- Self driving cars and electric buses are eco friendly.

5- Punctuate the following sentences:

1- We saw paintings, sculptures, and pottery.

2- Have you visited a gallery before?

General Test 9

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

1- F 2- T 3- F 4- T

2- Choose the correct answer:

1- c) technology 2- b) travels

3- a) manufacture 4- c) has

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

1- painting 2- palettes
3- wood 4- galleries

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

1) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

1- b) few 2- a) strong

2) Answer the following questions:

3- Egypt used to buy many things from other countries.

4- It makes high-quality clothes and fabrics sold in Egypt and in other countries.

5- It produces its own pasta, juice, and snacks.

3- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

1- that 2- nor

4- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1- Many people work in small local shops.

2- Are you proud of your country's progress?

5- Punctuate the following sentences:

1- He had maps, paintings, and photos.

2- Did you visit your uncle yesterday ?

Answers Key

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1- is 2- whose

6- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1- Tuna el-Gabel is a mysterious burial site.
2- Have you visited an ancient tomb before?

7- Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1- I visited the big ancient temple.
2- Have you eaten pizza before?

General Test 12

1- Listen and write T (True) or F (False):

- 1- F 2- T 3- T 4- F

2- Choose the correct answer:

- 1- a) gears 2- d) which
3- a) toothpick 4- c) nor

3- Read and complete the text with the words in the box:

- 1- mummies 2- tomb
3- Greek 4- animals

4- Read the text and answer the questions:

(A) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:

- 1- b) southern 2- c) failure

(B) Answer the following questions:

- 3- to water their crops during the year.
4- as it produces clean, powerful energy.
5- to control the rivers flooding and to produce electricity.

5- Read and write the correct form of the word(s) between brackets:

- 1- will 2- explained

6- Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

- 1- There are digital screens inside trains.
2- If you take a monorail, you'll arrive faster.

7- Punctuate the following sentences:

- 1- Please, show me your English homework.
2- Has she used electric buses before?